Mary Anna [illegible]

THE

YOUNG STUDENT'S COMPANION,

OR

ELEMENTARY LESSONS AND EXERCISES IN TRANSLATING

FROM

ENGLISH INTO FRENCH

Twelfth Edition.
REVISED AND ENLARGED.

PHILADELPHIA:
ELDREDGE & BROTHER,
No. 17 North Seventh Street.
1872.

RECOMMENDATIONS.

Having examined attentively a little book called The Young Student's Companion, I take pleasure in recommending it to the attention of those who wish to acquire a thorough knowledge of the French language. They will find in it much information, especially in acquiring a correct use of the articles, pronouns, &c., which present always great difficulties, and require much time and trouble in finding their real application in more elaborate works and large grammars.

PETER FRENAYE,
PROFESSOR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

Philadelphia, May 19, 1851.

The undersigned has used for several years The Young Student's Companion, in several schools, and with a great number of scholars. He has found every part of it to be perfectly clear and intelligible to all his scholars. He also considers the work as complete and as well calculated to give to the students a correct knowledge and practical use of the main parts of the French Grammar, as could be given within the limits assigned to it.

He therefore feels no hesitation in recommending it to the public as the most useful elementary work of its kind ever published in this country.

B. GARDEL.

Philadelphia, May 20th, 1858.

I consider "The Young Student's Companion," as the easiest possible introduction to the study of the French; I have used this simple and amiable little friend, with the greatest benefit to my young pupils.

PROF. F. DROUIN.

Philadelphia, June 9th, 1851.

RECOMMENDATIONS.

My opinion having been requested upon the Young Student's Companion, I take willingly this opportunity to recommend it as one of the best elementary books; because it contains in a very small size all that is necessary to beginners, and that can be found in the voluminous French Grammars. It is a judicious choice of all the elements of such a language; a clear and easy summary of its most important rules, made with order, shortness and skill, so as to instruct, not confound and tire the pupils. I have used and still use it in large classes, and it appears to me very fit and useful to learners of the French, particularly of this age, who like to be acquainted with it in a short time, and to receive few precepts and much practice.

V. DE AMARELLI,
PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA

Philadelphia, November 16, 1852.

From the moment I met with the Young Student's Companion and perused it, I preferred it to any other work of the kind. I consider the method employed in it the most useful to impart the first and most necessary principles of the French language.

J. MAROTEAU.

Philadelphia, January, 1853.

The clear and systematic arrangement of the "Young Student's Companion," judiciously divided between Grammar and Exercises, will make and keep it an ever welcome guide for both students and teachers.

A. SIMON,
PROFESSOR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

Philadelphia, May, 1867.

PREFACE.

The object of this little book is to present to the young student a condensed view of the elements of the French language, in a clear and simple manner, and, at the same time, to lessen the fatigue incurred by the teacher in giving repeated verbal explanations of the most important rules of etymology. No attempt has been made to teach the syntax of the language, with the exception of a few fundamental rules, neither have many idioms been introduced; the aim of the compiler being to avoid whatever might perplex or confuse. This little work, it will be remembered, is not intended to take the place of a Grammar, but to prepare the pupil, by careful drilling, for larger and more comprehensive treatises; and it is believed that any child, who can distinguish the different parts of speech in English, will be able to understand and learn the lessons without difficulty; and that, if they are thoroughly learned, the succeeding course of French study will be much facilitated.

The multiplication of school books may be considered an evil, but the compiler could not find any work containing

a clear, comprehensive view of the parts of speech and their modifications, and at the same time sufficiently elementary to be placed in the hands of pupils beginning to translate from English into French. She has, therefore, prepared this little volume, and, after teaching classes from it for several years, and testing its adaptation to the comprehension of pupils of various ages and capacities, she ventures to offer it to the public, in the hope that it may prove a useful auxiliary to other teachers. In its preparation the best authorities have been carefully consulted and followed, and assistance has been kindly furnished by several Professors of the French language, whose experience in teaching enables them to judge of the wants of the young student.

M. A. L.

Philadelphia, 1853.

TO TEACHERS.

The lessons preceding the exercises are designed to be committed to memory by the pupil. He will find it advantageous to commit to memory the vocabularies also, as they occur.

It is not sufficient that the pupil merely write these exercises to be examined by the teacher; he should also be required to give his reasons for using one form of the article, adjective, &c., in preference to another.

ELEMENTARY FRENCH EXERCISES.

CHAPTER I.

ON THE ARTICLE.

SECT. I. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

The,	*le,*	*la,*	*l',*	*les.*
Of the,	*du,*	*de la,*	*de l',*	*des.*
To the,	*au,*	*à la,*	*à l',*	*aux.*
From the,	*du,*	*de la,*	*de l',*	*des.*

§ 1. The definite article *the* is expressed in French by *le*, before a noun of the masculine gender, singular number, beginning with a consonant or an *h* aspirated;

la, before a noun of the feminine gender, singular number, beginning with a consonant or an *h* aspirated;

l', before a noun of either gender, singular number beginning with a vowel or a mute *h*;

les, before a noun of the plural number, of either gender, whether it begin with a vowel or a consonant.

N. B.—The pupil will remember that a *mute h*, a *silent h*, and an *h* NOT aspirated, are synonymous; that is, they mean the same thing

Vocabulary.

Book,	*livre*, m	King,	*roi*, m.
Brother,	*frère*, m.	Lion,	*lion*, m.
Cow	*vache*, f.	Man,	*homme*, m. *h* silent.
Coat,	*habit*, m. *h* mute.	Mind,	*esprit*, m.
Dog,	*chien*, m.	Pen,	*plume*, f.
Ear,	*oreille*, f.	Queen,	*reine*, f.
Friend,	*ami*, m.	Sister,	*sœur*, f.
Grass,	*herbe*, f. *h* mute.	Star,	*étoile*, f.
Head,	*tête*, f.	Soul,	*âme*, f.
Ink,	*encre*, f.	Work,	*ouvrage*, m.

N. B.—All the nouns used in the Exercises on the Article, form the plural by adding *s* to the singular.

RULE FOR THE ARTICLE.—Every Article must agree in gender and number with the noun to which it relates.

Exercise 1.

The king, the dog, the book. The queen, the pen, the cow. The mind, the work, the man. The star, the ink, the grass. The pens, the stars, the books. The lion, the head, the ear, the sister, the kings, the friend, the coat, the men, the soul, the brother, the ears, the grass, the brothers, the sisters, the men.

---

§ 2. *De* is the French word for *of* and *from*. But *of the* and *from the* are expressed by

du, (instead of *de le*, of which it is a contraction,) before a noun of the masculine gender, singular number, beginning with a consonant or an *h* aspirated;

de la, before a noun of the feminine gender, singular number, beginning with a consonant or an *h* aspirated;

de l', before a noun of either gender, singular number, beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute;

des, (a contraction of *de les*,) before nouns of the

plural number, and of either gender, whether they begin with a consonant or not.

Exercise 2.

Of the king. From the book. Of the queen. From the pen. Of the work. Of the man. From the lion. From the grass. Of the friends. From the stars. The dogs of the queen. The coat of the brother. The ears of the dog. The head of the cow. The sister of the friend. The mind of the man. The books of the men.

Remark.—Du, de la, de l', and *des*, are also used to express the possessive case of nouns; thus, The king's brother, *le frère* DU *roi;* the queen's sister, *la sœur* DE LA *reine.*

Exercise 3.

The king's coat. The queen's friend. The man's dog. The queen's brother. The brother of the queen. The king's sisters. The sisters of the king. From the cow's head. Of the lion's ear. The dog's ears. The king's books. The kings' coats. The men's cows. The cows' heads. The brother's coat. Of the queen's dogs.

---

§ 3. *A* is the French word for *to*. But *to the* is expressed by

au, (instead of *à le*, of which it is a contraction,) before a noun of the masculine gender, singular number, beginning with a consonant or an *h* aspirated;

à la, before a noun of the feminine gender, singular number, beginning with a consonant or an *h* aspirated;

à l', before a noun of either gender, singular number, beginning with a vowel or a silent *h;*

aux, (a contraction of *à les*,) before nouns of the plural number.

N. B.—The pupil must not omit the grave accent (`) over *à*, to, as this accent distinguishes the word *à*, to, from *a*, the French word for *has*.

Vocabulary.

And,	*et.*	History,	*histoire*, f. *h* silent.
Boy,	*garçon*, m.	Honor,	*honneur*, m. *h* silent.
Child,	*enfant*, m.	Hour,	*heure*, f. *h* silent.
Door,	*porte*, f.	Justice,	*justice*, f.
Father,	*père*, m.	Mother,	*mère*, f.
Finger,	*doigt*, m.	School,	*école*, f.
Glove,	*gant*, m.	Tooth,	*dent*, f.
Garden,	*jardin*, m.	Tree,	*arbre*, m.
Hand,	*main*, f.	Truth,	*vérité*, f.

Exercise 4.

To the boy, to the garden. To the door, to the hand. To the tree, to the school. To the honor, to the hour. To the boys, to the doors, to the trees, to the histories. To the ear, to the ears. To the tooth, to the teeth. To the finger of the boy. To the hand of the mother. To the trees of the garden. To the sister of the boys. To the hands of the child. To the justice of the king. To the gloves of the children. To the truth of the history.

---

§ 4. The rules given above for rendering the article into French, may be briefly expressed as follows:

Before a *plural* noun *the* is expressed by *les; of the* and *from the*, by *des; to the*, by *aux*.

Before a *singular* noun of either gender, beginning with a *vowel* or a silent *h*, *the* is expressed by *l'; of the* and *from the*, by *de l'; to the*, by *à l'*.

Before a *singular* noun of the *feminine* gender, beginning w th a *consonant* or an *h* aspirate, *the* is expressed by *la; of the* and *from the*, by *de la; to the*, by *à la*.

Before a *singular* noun of the *masculine* gender, beginning with a *consonant* or an *h* aspirate, *the* is expressed by *le; of the* and *from the*, by *du; to the*, by *au*.

Exercise 5.

The father, of the father, to the father, from the father. The mother, of the mother, to the mother, from the mother. The fathers, of the fathers, to the fathers, from the fathers. The child, of the child, to the child, from the child. The children, of the children, to the children, from the children. The hour, to the hour, of the hours. The man, of the man, to the men. Of the histories. From the histories. The boy's friend. The sister's mind. The child's ear. The teeth of the lion. Send (*envoyez*) the children to the school. To the sister of the king. Bring (*apportez*) the boys' pens. To the stars. To the ink.

§ 5. In English, when two or more nouns are connected by the conjunction *and*, the article is sometimes expressed before the first noun only, and omitted before the others; but in French, the article must be repeated before each of the nouns.

The same remark applies to the prepositions *à* and *de*.

Exercise 6.

The pen and ink. The ear and hand of the man. The friend of the father, mother, and children. To the kings and queens. The books of the brothers and sisters. The children's mother and father. Send the books, pens, and ink to the school. Bring the boy's coat and gloves to the door. The king's truth and justice. The child's ear and fingers. To the honor and justice of the boy. The queen's brothers and sisters. The children's friend. Send the gloves to the men and boys. Of the friend's work. The king's friends. To the queen's gardens. To the father, mother, and child. Send the boys' coats to the man.

Remark.—In every French grammar, various rules are given for the use and omission of the article, but they do not come within the scope of so elementary a work as this. The following one, however, is so important to the beginner, that it is inserted.

§ 6. RULE.—All French nouns used in the widest sense, must be preceded by the definite article.

In English, nouns taken in their widest sense are used without an article. Thus in saying, Man is mortal, we mean by man, *all mankind.* When we say, Birds fly, fishes swim, quadrupeds have four feet, we do not mean some birds, some fishes, some quadrupeds, but *all* birds, fishes, quadrupeds. In the French language, the reverse of this takes place.

N. B.—In the following exercise, write in French the *nouns* only with their appropriate articles.

Exercise 7.

Kings and queens are mortal. Children love to play. Ink is liquid. Mind cannot die. Friends are invaluable. Grass is green. Men love truth and justice. Honor is often misunderstood. Lions roar. Boys should not be mischievous. Man's honor. The histories of kings and queens. Truth is precious. Stars twinkle. Dogs and lions are carnivorous. Cows eat grass. Kings should be just.

§ 7. PROPER NOUNS.—(1.) Names of *countries* take the definite article before them; as, Europe, *l'Europe.*

Unless they are preceded by a verb signifying *dwelling*, *going*, or *coming*, when the article must be omitted. In these instances, *in* and *to* must be translated by *en*, and *from*, by *de;* as,

He is in France,	*Il est en France,*
He comes from France,	*Il vient de France.*
He is going to France,	*Il va en France.*

N. B.—Several exceptions to this general rule are found in French grammars, which the pupil will learn hereafter.

(2.) The names of *persons*, *cities*, and *towns*, are used in French as in English, without the article.

SECT. II. THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

A or an,	*un*, masc. sing.
A or an,	*une*, fem. sing.

§ 8. *A* or *an* is translated into French by *un* before a noun of the masculine gender, and by *une* before a noun of the feminine gender, whether the French noun begin with a consonant or a vowel.

	Masc.	Fem.
Of a or an,	*d'un*,	*d'une*.
To a or an,	*à un*,	*à une*.
From a or an,	*d'un*,	*d'une*.

Vocabulary.

Apple,	*pomme*, f.	Perfume,	*parfum*, m.
Apricot,	*abricot*, m.	Pink,	*œillet*, m.
Cloth,	*drap*, m.	Plum,	*prune*, f.
House,	*maison*, f.	Rose,	*rose*, f.
Lemon,	*citron*, m.	Silk,	*soie*, f.
Orange,	*orange*, f.	Snow-drop,	*perce-neige*, f.
Peach,	*pêche*, f.	Strawberry,	*fraise*, f.
Pencil,	*crayon*, m.	Violet,	*violette*, f.

Exercise 8.

A rose, an orange, a pink, an apple. Of a lemon, of a plum, of a violet, of an apricot. To a pink, to a snow-drop, to a father, to a child. A history of a king. The head of a lion. A sister of the queen. To a garden. To a house. Bring a pencil and a book. Send an apple and an orange to the boy's mother. Of an hour. The fingers of a glove. A lion's ears. From a king. Have you (*avez-vous*) a pen? Will you have (*voulez-vous*) an apricot? The trees of a garden. From a friend, from a star, from a child, from a history. The perfume of a violet. To the door of a house.

SECT III. THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

Some or any, *du, de la, de l', des, de, d'*.

§ 9. The partitive article, *du, de la, de l', des, de, d'*, (Englished by *some* or *any*, expressed or understood,) is used to express a portion of a whole thing, or part of a quantity of things.

Some or *any* is expressed in French by

du, before a noun masculine, singular, commencing with a consonant or *h* aspirate;

de la, before a noun feminine, singular, commencing with a consonant or *h* aspirate;

de l', before a noun singular, commencing with a vowel or silent *h*;

des, before a noun of the plural number;

de, before an *adjective* commencing with a consonant or *h* aspirate, or, in a *negative* sentence, before a noun of either number commencing with a consonant or *h* aspirate;

d', before an *adjective* commencing with a vowel or *h* mute, or, in a *negative* sentence, before a noun commencing with a vowel or *h* mute.

Vocabulary.

Beef,	*bœuf*, m.	Milk,	*lait*, m.
Beauty,	*beauté*, f.	Modesty,	*modestie*, f.
Bread,	*pain*, m.	Mutton,	*mouton*, m.
Butter,	*beurre*, m.	Prudence,	*prudence*, f.
Coffee,	*café*, m.	Silver,	*argent*, m.
Cream,	*crême*, f.	Sugar,	*sucre*, m.
Gold,	*or*, m.	Tea,	*thé*, m.
Grape,	*raisin*, m.	Wine,	*vin*, m

Exercise 9.

Some bread and some cream. Some strawberries and some apricots. Have you any lemons? Will you have some ink? Send some peaches to the child's mother. Some histories. Some prudence. Have you any grapes? Some houses. Some pencils. Have you any pinks? Some sugar and some tea. Bring some grapes, some oranges, and some lemons. Some work. Some cloth and some silk

§ 10. *Some* or *any* is often understood in English without being expressed; but when it is understood, the partitive article must be expressed in French, and must be repeated before every noun where it is understood.

Exercise 10.

Some coffee, tea, and sugar. Will you have milk or (*ou*) cream? Send some books, pens, and ink to the boys. Have you any bread and butter? I have (*j'ai*) snow-drops and violets. Will you have beef or mutton? She has (*elle a*) beauty and modesty. Send some strawberries and cream to the boy's sister. Bring some pinks and roses. Will you have gold or silver? He has (*il a*) apples and plums. She has a father and mother, brothers and sisters, children and friends.

Remark 1. The pupil must remember that it is when the *French* adjective precedes the noun that *some* and *any* are expressed by *de* or *d'*; by *de*, if the French adjective commences with a consonant, and by *d'*, if the adjective commences with a vowel or silent *h*.

Exercise 11.

Some bread. Some good (*bon*) bread. Have you any pens? Have you any good (*bonnes*) pens? She has fine (*belles*) oranges. Bring some good (*bonne*) ink. Have you any new (*nouveaux*) books? She has good (*bons*) friends. Have you coffee, tea, and sugar? Here are (*voici*) some fine (*belles*) peaches. Bring some roses and violets. Have you fine (*belles*) cows? Send some grapes and oranges to the children. Have you good (*bonnes*) oranges? Will you have silk or cloth?

Exercise 12.

Give me (*donnez-moi*) the boy's gloves, and send the coat to the school. Will you have coffee or tea? The beauty of the stars. Have you any good (*bonne*) ink? Send some ink to the boys. Have you any roses? Here are some fine (*belles*) roses. The grass of the garden. The lion's tooth. A man's hands. Give me some snow-drops and violets. Send some bread and milk to the children. A dog's head. Send a rose and a pink to the child's sister. A star, an hour, a hand. The ears of lions and dogs. The rose's perfume.

Remark 2. In the following Exercise, *no* is equivalent to *not any;* and *not*, used with a verb, is expressed in French by placing *ne* before the verb and *pas* after it. *Ne* is written *n'* before a vowel or *h* mute.

Exercise 13.

Have you any bread? I have no (not any) bread. He has no friends. I have no fine (*belles*) oranges. She has prudence; she has no beauty. Have you any books? Have you any good (*bons*) books? I have no apricots. I have no good (*bons*) apricots. I have good (*bonnes*) plums. She has apples. He has fine (*belles*) apples. The boy has good (*bonnes*) pens. The brother has no good (*bonnes*) pens. Have you good (*bon*) wine? I have no wine; I have milk. The man has silver; he has no gold. The child has no teeth.

Remark 3. *Some* and *any*, meaning *a few*, and followed by a noun, are translated into French by *quelques*, as will be seen in the Section on the Indefinite Adjectives.

Remark 4. *Some* and *any*, meaning *a few*, and *not* followed by a noun, will be explained in Chapter X, on the Indefinite Pronouns.

Remark 5. *Some* and *any*, not followed by a noun, and used at the end of a sentence, will be explained in Chapter VII, on the Personal Pronouns.

CHAPTER II.

THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF FRENCH NOUNS.

§ 11. To form the plural of French nouns, add *s* to the singular; as *père*, father, *pères*, fathers.

Exception 1. Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, in the singular, do not vary in the plural; as *fils*, son, *fils*, sons.

Exception 2. Nouns ending in *au* or *eu*, add *x* to form the plural; as *eau*, water, *eaux*, waters.

Exception 3. The following nouns in *ou* take *x* to form the plural; viz: *bijou*, jewel; *caillou*, pebble; *chou*, cabbage; *genou*, knee; *hibou*, owl: *pou*, louse; *joujou*, plaything.

Verrou, bolt, has *verrous* for the plural, according to the French Academy, but in most dictionaries, *verroux* is given as the plural.

N. B. Remember that all other French nouns in *ou* form their plural regularly, by the addition of *s*.

Exception 4. Nouns ending in *al* change this termination into *aux* to form the plural; as *cheval*, horse, *chevaux*, horses.

But *bal*, ball; *carnaval*, carnival; *régal*, feast, and a few others, form their plural regularly, by the addition of *s* to the singular.

Exception 5. The following nouns in *ail* form their plural by changing *ail* into *aux;* viz: *bail*, lease; *émail*, enamel; *corail*, coral; *travail*, work; *soupirail*, air-hole; *vantail*, leaf of a folding door; *ventail*, the part of a helmet which admits air.

Other French nouns in *ail* form their plural regularly by adding *s* to the singular.

Exception 6. *Ciel*, heaven, has *cieux* in the plural. *Œil*, eye, has *yeux*. *Aïeul*, ancestor, has *aïeux*.

N. B. There are a few irregularities in the formation of the plural of nouns which are not mentioned here, because they are not important to the young student. They can be found in almost any French grammar.

Exercise 14.

The pupil will commit to memory the following French nouns, and write them in the plural.

Animal,	*animal*, m.	Eye,	*œil*, m.
Arm,	*bras*, m.	Fan,	*éventail*, m.
Ball,	*bal*, m.	Feast,	*régal*, m.
Bird,	*oiseau*, m.	Fire,	*feu*, m.
Bolt,	*verrou*, m.	Fool,	*fou*, m.
Bone,	*os*, m.	Foot,	*pied*, m.
Brook,	*ruisseau*, m.	Game,	*jeu*, m.
Cabbage,	*chou*, m.	General,	*général*, m.
Cage,	*cage*, f.	Girl,	*fille*, f.
Carnival,	*carnaval*, m.	Hammer,	*marteau*, m.
Cent,	*sou*, m.	Hat,	*chapeau*, m.
Cloak,	*manteau*, m.	Hair, (a)	*cheveu*, m
Coral,	*corail*, m.	Halter,	*licou*, m.
Country,	*pays*, m.	Heaven,	*ciel*, m.
Cradle,	*berceau*, m.	Height,	*hauteur*, f. *h* asp.
Cross,	*croix*, f.	Hero,	*héros*, m. *h* asp.
Crystal,	*cristal*, m.	Hole,	*trou*, m.
Daughter,	*fille*, f.	Horse,	*cheval*, m.
Day,	*jour*, m.	Jewel,	*bijou*, m.
Detail,	*détail*, m.	Knee,	*genou*, m.
Evil,	*mal*, m.	Knife,	*couteau*, m.

Exercise 15.

The pupil will commit to memory the following French nouns, and write them in the plural.

Lamb,	*agneau*, m.	Mallet,	*mail*, m.
Lease,	*bail*, m.	Month,	*mois*, m.
Lesson,	*leçon*, f.	Mouth,	*bouche*, f.
Lily,	*lis*, m.	Mouse,	*souris*, f.
Louse,	*pou*, m	Nail,	*clou*, m.

Neighbor,	*voisin*, m.	Son,	*fils*, m.
Nephew,	*neveu*, m.	Stocking,	*bas*, m.
Night,	*nuit*, f.	Table,	*table*, f.
Nose,	*nez*, m.	Tongue,	*langue*, f.
Owl,	*hibou*, m. *h* asp.	Tooth,	*dent*, f.
Palace,	*palais*, m.	Thumb,	*pouce*, m.
Pebble,	*caillou*, m.	Value,	*prix*, m.
Pine-apple,	*ananas*, m.	Vessel,	*vaisseau*, m.
Place,	*lieu*, m.	Voice,	*voix*, f.
Plaything,	*joujou*, m.	Walnut,	*noix*, f.
Price,	*prix*, m.	Water,	*eau*, f.
Ring,	*anneau*, m.	Weight,	*poids*, m.
Room,	*chambre*, f.	Wind,	*vent*, m.
Rudder,	*gouvernail*, m	Woman,	*femme*, f.
Shoe,	*soulier*, m.	Wood,	*bois*, m.
Sheep,	*brebis*, f.	Work,	*travail*, m.
Sky,	*ciel*, m.	Worth,	*prix*, m.

Exercise 16.

The rudders of the vessels. The eyes of the birds. The voices of the generals. The queen's jewels. The children's playthings. Bring some cabbages from the garden. Give me the boys' hats and cloaks. From the palaces. Give me some strawberries, some lemons, a pine-apple, and some fine (*belles*) oranges. The boy's friend has gold and silver. Here are some good (*bonnes*) pens. The man has horses and cows. The teeth of the mice. Will you have wine or water? Have you any good (*bonne*) water? The boy's arms.

Exercise 17.

The halters of the horses. The voice of the hero. The sons of the heroes. The prices of the fans. Here are some nails and bolts. The bones of the arm. The pebbles of the brooks. Have you any pine-apples? The lilies of the gardens. The head, mouth, and teeth of a sheep. The price of the horses. The voices of the birds. Bring some crystals. Of the waters and winds. To the balls of the queen. The eyes of the owl. To the skies. The ear and eye of man. Send some pine-apples and peaches to the neighbors.

CHAPTER III.

ON THE ADJECTIVE.

SECT. I. THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

§ 12. RULE 1.—Adjectives ending with *e* mute have their masculine and feminine alike; as *digne, digne,* worthy.

§ 13. RULE 2.—The feminine of adjectives which do not end with *e* mute, is generally formed by adding *e* mute to the masculine; as *méchant, méchante,* wicked.

Exception 1.—Adjectives ending with *f* change this letter into *ve;* as *bref, brève,* short.

Exception 2.—Adjectives ending with *x* change this letter into *se;* as *heureux, heureuse,* happy.

Exception 3.—Adjectives ending in

el,	make their feminine in	*elle,*
eil,		*eille,*
en,		*enne,*
et,		*ette,*
on,		*onne,*

as *tel, telle,* such; *pareil, pareille,* like; *ancien, ancienne,* ancient; *muet, muette,* dumb; *bon, bonne,* good.

The following list includes many of the adjectives in common use which do not form their feminine gender agreeably to the rules given above.

Masc.	Fem.	English.
Doux,	*douce,*	sweet.
Faux,	*fausse,*	false.
Nul,	*nulle,*	no.
Gentil,	*gentille,*	kind or pretty
Sot,	*sotte,*	silly.
Bas,	*basse,*	low.
Gras,	*grasse,*	fat.
Las,	*lasse,*	weary.
Epais,	*épaisse,*	thick.
Gros,	*grosse,*	large.
Frais,	*fraîche,*	fresh.
Blanc,	*blanche,*	white.
Franc,	*franche,*	frank.
Sec,	*sèche,*	dry.
Public,	*publique,*	public.
Long,	*longue,*	long.
Bénin,	*bénigne,*	benign.
Malin,	*maligne,*	malicious.
Trompeur,	*trompeuse,*	deceitful.
Favori,	*favorite,*	favorite.

Before a noun masculine, beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated.	Before a noun masculine, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.	Fem.	English.
Beau,	*bel,*	*belle,*	beautiful.
Nouveau,	*nouvel,*	*nouvelle,*	new.
Fou,	*fol,*	*folle,*	foolish.
Mou,	*mol,*	*molle,*	soft.
Vieux,	*vieil,*	*vieille,*	old.

Exercise 18.

The pupil will commit to memory the following French adjectives, and write them in the feminine singular.

Actif, active.
Agé, old.
Amer,* bitter.
Ancien, ancient.
Attentif, attentive.
Aveugle, blind.
Avide, greedy.
Bleu, blue.
Bon, good.
Bref, short.
Captif, captive.
Carré, square.
Cher,* dear.
Content, pleased.
Coupable, guilty.
Courageux, courageous.
Digne, worthy.
Difficile, difficult.
Dur, hard.
Envieux, envious.
Fidèle, faithful.
Grand, great, tall.
Gris, grey.
Heureux, happy.
Ingrat, ungrateful.
Injuste, unjust.
Jaune, yellow.
Jeune, young.
Léger,* light.
Malade, sick.
Malheureux, unhappy.
Méchant, wicked.
Mortel, mortal.
Muet, dumb.
Naturel, natural.
Noir, black.
Odoriférant, fragrant.
Oisif, idle.
Orgueilleux, proud.
Pareil, like.
Paresseux, lazy.
Pauvre, poor.
Pensif, thoughtful.
Précieux, precious.
Pourpre, purple.
Propre, clean.
Rond, round.
Rouge, red.
Soigneux, careful.
Sourd, deaf.
Triste, sad.
Vermeil, rosy.
Vert, green.
Vertueux, virtuous.
Vif, quick, lively.
Vindicatif, revengeful.

Neuf, new, that has not been used.
Nouveau, new, newly published.

* Adjectives ending in *er*, form the feminine not only by the addition of *e* mute, but require a grave accent (`) to be placed over the *e* preceding the final *r*.

SECT. II. THE PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 14. The masculine plural of adjectives is formed like that of nouns, and the feminine plural is formed from the feminine singular by adding *s*.

Except, *bleu*, blue, makes *bleus;* and *tout*, all, makes *tous*, in the plural masculine.

Remark.—Participles, when used as adjectives, form their feminine by the addition of a mute *e*, and their plural by the addition of *s*.

Exercise 19.

The pupil will commit to memory the following French adjectives and participles, and write them in the feminine singular, masculine plural, and feminine plural.

Aimé,	loved.	*Fort,*	strong.
Affreux,	frightful.	*Français,*	French.
Américain,	American.	*Gauche,*	left, awkward.
Anglais,	English.	*Généreux,*	generous.
Brun,	brown.	*Honnête,*	honest.
Capricieux,	whimsical.	*Italien,*	Italian.
Court,	short.	*Jaloux,*	jealous.
Cruel,	cruel.	*Lent,*	slow.
Curieux,	curious.	*Mûr,*	ripe.
Dangereux,	dangerous.	*Perdu,*	lost.
Dernier,	last.	*Plein,*	full.
Donné,	given.	*Prêt,*	ready.
Droit,	right.	*Pris,*	taken.
Dû,	owed.	*Puni,*	punished.
Ecrit,	written.	*Reçu,*	received.
Egal,	equal.	*Seul,*	alone, only.
Eu,	had.	*Suivi,*	followed.
Fier,	haughty.	*Vendu,*	sold.
Fin,	fine, not coarse.	*Vu,*	seen.

SECT. III. THE PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 15. (1.) Most French adjectives *follow* the noun to which they refer.

(2.) The following are commonly placed *before* the noun.

Beau, handsome, fine.	*Méchant*, wicked.
Bon, good.	*Meilleur*, better.
Cher, dear, meaning *loved*.	*Même*, same.
Grand, great.	*Moindre*, less.
Gros, large.	*Petit*, small, little.
Jeune, young.	*Saint*, holy.
Joli, pretty.	*Tout*, all.
Mauvais, bad.	*Vieux*, old.

(3.) The *numeral* adjectives, also, are placed *before* the noun, except when speaking of titles.

(4.) Some adjectives have different meanings, according as they are placed before or after the noun. Thus

Un GRAND *homme*,	means	a great man.
Un homme GRAND,	"	a tall man.
Un BRAVE *homme*,	"	a good man.
Un homme BRAVE,	"	a brave man.
Un HONNÊTE *homme*,	"	an honest man.
Un homme HONNÊTE,	"	a polite man.
Un PAUVRE *auteur*,	"	an author without merit.
Un auteur PAUVRE,	"	an author without a fortune.

Cher, dear, meaning *high-priced*, is placed *after* the noun; as, *un habit* CHER, a dear coat.

Bon has not its usual meaning before the word *homme*, man; for *un* BON *homme* means a simpleton, or an artless man with little sense; *un homme* BON means a good-natured man. With all other words *bon* has its usual meaning, and is placed before them.

N.B. For the other adjectives whose signification varies according to their position, the pupil is referred to a French grammar or dictionary.

(5.) Many French adjectives can be placed either before or after their nouns, as the sound, perspicuity, or emphasis requires

SECT. IV. THE AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE 1.—Every adjective must agree in gender and number with the noun or pronoun to which it refers.

RULE 2.—If an adjective is used to qualify two or more nouns in the *singular* number of the *same* gender, it must be put in the *plural*, and agree with them in gender; as,

The father and uncle are pleased.
Le père et l'oncle sont CONTENTS.
The mother and aunt are pleased.
La mère et la tante sont CONTENTES.

If the nouns to which the adjective relates are of *different* genders, the adjective is to be put in the *masculine plural;* as,

The father and mother are pleased.
Le père et la mère sont CONTENTS.

Exercise 20.

A handsome horse. A fine cow. The handsome horses of my (*mon*) friend. The neighbor's fine cows. The old woman is (*est*) blind and deaf. The blind man is happy. He has a faithful dog and a fine garden. The brother and sister are (*sont*) happy. We have delicious peaches and apricots. The queen has grey horses. The king's brother is a tall man. The children's mother is a courageous woman. A pretty child. The envious girl is unhappy.

Remark.—The pupil must remember that, although *some* is expressed by *de* or *d'* before an adjective, (see § 9,) yet *of the* is invariably translated by *du*, *de la*, *de l'* and *des*, as explained in § 2.

Exercise 21.

I have fine sheep. The price of the fine sheep. You have pretty lambs. The beauty of the young lambs. An English boy. An Italian girl. The public voice. A clean house. I have white stockings and black shoes. The right hand and the left hand. The history of good kings. Send me some blue violets. The perfume of the blue violet is delicious. He sells bad apples. We have no ripe peaches. You have a short lesson. The queer had a haughty soul

SECT. V. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 16. Examples of adjectives compared regularly.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Sage,	*plus sage,*	*le plus sage.*
Wise,	wiser,	the wisest.
Heureux,	*plus heureux,*	*le plus heureux.*
Happy,	happier,	the happiest.
Honteux,	*plus honteux,*	*le plus honteux.*
Shameful,	more shameful,	the most shameful.
Utile,	*moins utile,*	*le moins utile.*
Useful,	less useful,	the least useful.

More amiable than,	*plus aimable que.*
Less studious than,	*moins studieux que.*
Not so fatal as,	*pas aussi funeste que.*
As delicious as,	*aussi délicieux que.*

N. B.—*Que* is written *qu'* before a vowel or silent *h*.

Exercise 22.

The rose is more beautiful than the violet. This (*cette*) apple is as delicious as a pine-apple. She is less studious than her (*sa*) sister. A rose as white as the lily. Peaches are more delicious than apples. The greatest of evils. The happiest child. The least amiable of the sisters. The most wicked of men. The snow-drop is not so fragrant as the violet. The perfume of the rose is sweeter than that (*celui*) of the pink. Gold is more precious than silver. Silver is less precious than gold. The night is as short as the day.

Exercise 23.

The most cruel of kings. The most generous of queens. The plum is less sweet than the peach. The lion is the strongest of animals. The beauty of the white lily is not equal to that (*celle*) of the white rose. The mother and the children are ready. The peaches are riper than the plums. The history of the evils. The prices of the mallets. A woman less cruel and whimsical than the queen. We have purple grapes and red apples. A beautiful bird.

§ 17. The following ADJECTIVES are compared *irregularly*, thus:

Bon, good,	*meilleur*, better,	*le meilleur*, the best.
Petit, little, or small,	*moindre*, less, or smaller,	*le moindre*, the least, or smallest.
Mauvais, bad,	*pire*, worse,	*le pire*, the worst.

Remark.—*Better* and *best*, when adjectives, are *always* translated by *meilleur* and *le meilleur;* but *less* may be translated by *plus petit*, as well as by *moindre*, and *worse* by *plus mauvais*, as well as by *pire*.

Exercise 24.

Give me a better pen and blacker ink. The value (*valeur*, f.) of silver is less than that (*celle*) of gold. The apple is good, but (*mais*) the peach is better. Give me the worst of the pens. The best of the brothers. The height of the house is less than that (*celle*) of the tree. A better house. The pen is bad. The ink is worse. Have you a better book? The worst of evils.

§ 18. The pupil should be careful not to confound the preceding adjectives with the following adverbs, which are likewise irregularly compared.

ADVERBS.

Bien, well,	*mieux*, better,	*le mieux*, the best.
Peu, little,	*moins*, less,	*le moins*, the least.
Mal, badly,	*pis*, worse,	*le pis*, the worst.

Exercise 25.

N. B. The pupil will find in the Appendix the verbs used in the following exercises, unless they are inserted in the exercise.

I write little, but you write less. The little child has red shoes. The pen is better than the ink. The sister reads better than the brother. The price of the cloth is less than that (*celui*) of the silk. The apples are sweet, the peaches are sweeter. The neighbor does badly; his (*son*) brother does worse. The height of the trees is greater than that (*celle* of the house. Give me riper plums.

Remark.—In English, nouns are used as adjectives when they are placed before other nouns which they describe; as, *A cloth coat.* But in French, the noun which is used as an adjective, is placed after the other, with a preposition between them to express their relation to each other.

When the first noun denotes the *material* of which anything is made, it is placed after the second noun, with the preposition *de* between them; as, A cloth coat, *Un habit* DE *drap.*

N. B. Other relations between nouns are variously expressed in French, but they do not come within the scope of so elementary a work as this. The pupil will find them explained in French grammars.

Vocabulary.

Edward,	*Edouard.*	Lucy,	*Lucie.*
Emily,	*Emilie.*	Mary,	*Marie.*
George,	*George.*	Matilda,	*Mathilde.*
Henry,	*Henri.*	Peter,	*Pierre.*
John,	*Jean.*	Sophia,	*Sophie.*
Julia,	*Julie.*	Stephen,	*Etienne.*
Louisa,	*Louise.*	William,	*Guillaume.*

Exercise 26.

Mary has a silver knife and a gold pencil. Will you have silk stockings? Sophia writes well, but Emily writes better. Henry is older than William. Mary is more careful than Matilda. Edward is the most active of the boys. Emily is the most attentive of the girls. Julia has blue gloves. A queen more benign than Mary. Will you have a longer lesson? Sophia has a little bird in a small cage. Louisa is lazier than Lucy. George shall have a silver pencil. Peter is taller than Stephen. She is as young and as beautiful as Emily. We have no sweet wine. A king less revengeful than John. A lesson badly written.

N.B. All the verbs used in the exercises are either found in the Appendix, or are conjugated like the verbs therein conjugated.

SECT. VI. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

(Extracted by permission from Bolmar's Colloquial Phrases.)

N. B When a number is named without a noun after it, it is pronounced as it is written opposite the figures, or as it is spelt between a parenthesis ( ), taking care not to pronounce the letter or letters marked in italics.

When some of the numbers are followed by a noun, their pronunciation varies according as that noun begins with a consonant, a vowel, or an *h* mute.—See the directions given in small print, under every number that needs any directions.

Nombres Cardinaux.		*Cardinal Numbers.*
1 un,	*masc.*	*one.*
1 une,	*fem.*	*one.*
2 deu*x*,		*two.*
deu, before a consonant.		
deuz, before a vowel or an *h* mute.		
3 troi*s*,		*three.*
troi, before a consonant.		
troiz, before a vowel or an *h* mute.		
4 quatre,		*four.*
5 cin*q*,		*five.*
cin, before a consonant.		
cink, before a vowel or an *h* mute.		
6 si*x* (sis)		*six.*
si, before a consonant.		
siz, before a vowel or an *h* mute.		
7 se*pt*,		*seven.*
sè, before a consonant.		
set, before a vowel or an *h* mute.		
8 hui*t*,		*eight.*
hui, before a consonant.		
huit, before a vowel or an *h* mute.		
9 neu*f*,		*nine.*
neu, before a consonant.		
neuv, before a vowel or an *h* mute.		

10	dix (dis)	*ten.*

di, before a consonant.
diz, before a vowel or an *h* mute.

11	onze,	*eleven.*
12	douze,	*twelve.*
13	treize,	*thirteen.*
14	quatorze,	*fourteen.*
15	quinze,	*fifteen.*
16	seize,	*sixteen.*
17	dix-se*p*t, (dis-set)	*seventeen.*
18	dix-huit, (di-zuit)	*eighteen.*
19	dix-neuf, (diz-neuf)	*nineteen.*
20	vin*gt*,	*twenty.*

In all the following, pronounce the *t* in *vingt* very strongly.

21	vin*gt* e*t* un, (vin té un)	*twenty-one.*
22	vin*gt*-deu*x*,	*twenty-two.*
23	vin*gt*-trois,	*twenty-three.*
24	vin*gt*-quatre,	*twenty-four.*
25	vin*gt*-cinq,	*twenty-five.*
26	vin*gt*-six,	*twenty-six.*
27	vin*gt*-se*p*t,	*twenty-seven.*
28	vin*gt*-huit,	*twenty-eight.*
29	vin*gt*-neuf,	*twenty-nine.*

In the following, pronounce the *t* in *trente* very strongly.

30	trente,	*thirty.*
31	trente *et* un,	*thirty-one.*
32	trente-deu*x*,	*thirty-two.*
33	trente-trois,	*thirty-three.*
34	trente-quatre,	*thirty-four.*
35	trente-cinq,	*thirty-five.*
36	trente-six (sis)	*thirty-six.*
37	trente-se*p*t,	*thirty-seven.*
38	trente-huit,	*thirty-eight.*
39	trente-neuf,	*thirty-nine.*

In all the following, pronounce the *t* in *quarante* very strongly.

40	quarante,	*forty.*
41	quarante e*t* un,	*forty-one.*
42	quarante-deu*x*,	*forty-two.*
43	quarante-troi*s*,	*forty-three.*
44	quarante-quatre,	*forty-four.*
45	quarante-cinq,	*forty-five.*
46	quarante-six, (sis)	*forty-six.*
47	quarante-se*p*t,	*forty-seven.*
48	quarante-huit,	*forty-eight.*
49	quarante-neuf,	*forty-nine.*

In all the following, pronounce the *t* in *cinquante* very strongly.

50	cinquante,	*fifty.*
51	cinquante e*t* un,	*fifty-one.*
52	cinquante-deu*x*,	*fifty-two.*
53	cinquante-troi*s*,	*fifty-three.*
54	cinquante-quatre,	*fifty-four.*
55	cinquante-cinq,	*fifty-five.*
56	cinquante-six, (sis)	*fifty-six.*
57	cinquante-se*p*t,	*fifty-seven.*
58	cinquante-huit,	*fifty-eight.*
59	cinquante-neuf,	*fifty-nine.*

In all the following, pronounce *soissant*, giving to the *ss* the strong and pure hissing sound of *s*; and pronounce the *t* very strongly.

60	soixante,	*sixty.*
61	soixante e*t* un,	*sixty-one.*
62	soixante-deu*x*,	*sixty-two.*
63	soixante-troi*s*,	*sixty-three.*
64	soixante-quatre,	*sixty-four.*
65	soixante-cinq,	*sixty-five.*
66	soixante-six, (sis)	*sixty-six.*
67	soixante-se*p*t,	*sixty-seven.*
68	soixante-huit,	*sixty-eight.*
69	soixante-neuf,	*sixty-nine.*
70	soixante e*t* dix, (dis)	*seventy.*

71	soixante-onze,	*seventy-one.*
72	soixante-douze,	*seventy-two.*
73	soixante-treize,	*seventy-three.*
74	soixante-quatorze,	*seventy-four.*
75	soixante-quinze,	*seventy-five.*
76	soixante-seize,	*seventy-six.*
77	soixante-dix-*sept*, (dis)	*seventy-seven.*
78	soixante-dix-huit, (diz)	*seventy-eight*
79	soixante-dix-neuf, (diz)	*seventy-nine.*
80	quatre-vin*gts*,	*eighty.*
81	quatre-vin*gt*-un,	*eighty-one.*
82	quatre-vin*gt*-deu*x*,	*eighty-two.*
83	quatre-vin*gt*-trois,	*eighty-three.*
84	quatre-vin*gt*-quatre,	*eighty-four.*
85	quatre-vin*gt*-cinq,	*eighty-five.*
86	quatre-vin*gt*-six, (sis)	*eighty-six.*
87	quatre-vin*gt*-*sept*,	*eighty-seven.*
88	quatre-vin*gt*-huit,	*eighty-eight.*
89	quatre-vin*gt*-neuf,	*eighty-nine.*
90	quatre-vin*gt*-dix, (dis)	*ninety.*
91	quatre-vin*gt*-onze,	*ninety-one.*
92	quatre-vin*gt*-douze,	*ninety-two.*
93	quatre-vin*gt*-treize,	*ninety-three.*
94	quatre-vin*gt*-quatorze,	*ninety-four.*
95	quatre-vin*gt*-quinze,	*ninety-five.*
96	quatre-vin*gt*-seize,	*ninety-six.*
97	quatre-vin*gt*-dix-*sept*, (dis)	*ninety-seven.*
98	quatre-vin*gt*-dix-huit, (diz)	*ninety-eight.*
99	quatre-vin*gt*-dix-neuf, (diz)	*ninety-nine.*
100	cen*t*,	*one hundred.*
101	cen*t* un,	*one hundred and one.*
102	cen*t* deu*x*,	*one hundred and two.*
103	cen*t* trois,	*one hundred and three.*
104	cen*t* quatre	*one hundred and four.*
105	cen*t* cinq,	*one hundred and five*

106 cent six, (sis)	*one hundred and six.*
107 cent sept,	*one hundred and seven.*
108 cent huit,	*one hundred and eight.*
109 cent neuf,	*one hundred and nine.*
110 cent dix, (dis)	*one hundred and ten.*
111 cent onze,	*one hundred and eleven*
112 cent douze,	*one hundred and twelve.*
113 cent treize,	*one hundred and thirteen.*
114 cent quatorze,	*one hundred and fourteen.*
115 cent quinze,	*one hundred and fifteen.*
116 cent seize,	*one hundred and sixteen,*
117 cent dix-sept, (dis)	*one hundred and seventeen.*
118 cent dix-huit, (diz)	*one hundred and eighteen.*
119 cent dix-neuf, (diz)	*one hundred and nineteen.*
120 cent vingt,	*one hundred and twenty.*
121 cent vingt et un,	*one hundred and twenty-one.*
122 cent vingt-deux,	*one hundred and twenty-two, &c.*
200 deux cents,	*two hundred.*
300 trois cents,	*three hundred.*
400 quatre cents,	*four hundred.*
500 cinq cents,	*five hundred.*
600 six cents,	*six hundred.*
700 sept cents,	*seven hundred.*
800 huit cents,	*eight hundred.*
900 neuf cents,	*nine hundred, &c.*
1,000 mille,	*one thousand.*
2,000 deux mille,	*two thousand.*
3,000 trois mille,	*three thousand, &c.*
100,000 cent mille,	*one hundred thousand.*
200,000 deux cent mille,	*two hundred thousand.*
300,000 trois cent mille,	*three hundred thousand, &c.*
1,000,000 un million,	*one million.*
2,000,000 deux millions,	*two millions.*
3,000,000 trois millions,	*three millions, &c.*

Note 1*st*.—With the exception of *un*, *une*, one, the cardinal numbe are invariable in gender; that is, they are not altered to agree with nouns of the feminine gender.

Note 2*nd*.—Although *onze*, eleven, and *onzième*, eleventh, begin with a vowel, the definite article *le*, *la*, does not suffer elision before them, and the article *les* is pronounced as if *onze* began with an *h* aspirated; as,

Le onzième cheval,	The eleventh horse.
Les onze pommes,	The eleven apples.

Note 3*rd*.—The adjective *quatre-vingts*, eighty, drops the plural termination (*s*,) when it is followed by another number; as,

Quatre-vingts crayons,	Eighty pencils.
Quatre-vingt-deux crayons,	Eighty-two pencils.
J'en ai quatre-vingt-quatre,	I have eighty-four.

Note 4*th*.—*Deux cents*, *trois cents*, &c., are written with the plural termination (*s*,) when they are not followed by another number; as,

Deux cents jours,	Two hundred days.
Deux cent un jours,	Two hundred and one days.

But these two adjectives, *quatre-vingts* and *cent*, do not take the plural when they are used in dates instead of the ordinal adjectives, *quatre-vingtième* and *centième*.

Charlemagne mourut en l'an huit cent.
Charlemagne died in the year 800.

Ce malheur arriva en l'an cinq cent quatre-vingt.
This calamity happened in the year 580.

Note 5*th*.—The adjective *mille*, thousand, never takes *s* as a mark of the plural; as,

Dix mille hommes,	Ten thousand men.

The word *thousand* in dates, is written *mil*; as,

En mil huit cent cinquante,	In 1850.

Although the preceding example is correct, it is more usual, and perhaps more elegant to say,

En dix-huit cent cinquante,	In eighteen hundred and fifty.

The word *mille*, used as a noun, and meaning a *mile*, follows the rule of nouns, and takes the plural; as,

Cent milles,	A hundred miles.

Note 6th.—*A*, and *one*, placed in English before *hundred* and *thousand*, are not expressed in French.

Note 7th.—The conjunction *and*, placed in English after *hundred* and *thousand*, when followed by another number, is not expressed in French; as,

Cent cinquante tables,	One hundred and fifty tables.

Note 8th.—The conjunction *et*, *and*, is used in French, although not in English, in the numbers *vingt et un*, twenty-one; *trente et un*, thirty-one, &c.

Note 9th.—The French Academy says a hyphen should neither *immediately* precede nor follow *cent*.

Exercise 27.

The pupil will write eleven lines of the Multiplication Table according to the following model;

Deux fois un font deux.
Twice (two times) one are two.

Nombres Ordinaux.		*Ordinal Numbers.*
Premier,	*masc.*	*first.*
première,	*fem.*	*first.*
second (segon)	*masc.*	*second.*
seconde (segond)	*fem.*	*second.*

From this, all the following are the same for the *masc.* and *fem.*

deuxième,	*second.*
troisième,	*third.*
quatrième,	*fourth.*
cinquième	*fifth.*
sixième,	*sixth.*

se*p*tième,	*seventh.*
huitième,	*eighth.*
neuvième,	*ninth.*
dixième,	*tenth.*
onzième,	*eleventh.*
douzième,	*twelfth.*
treizième,	*thirteenth.*
quatorzième,	*fourteenth.*
quinzième,	*fifteenth.*
seizième,	*sixteenth.*
dix-se*p*tième, (dis)	*seventeenth.*
dix-huitième, (diz)	*eighteenth.*
dix-neuvième, (diz)	*nineteenth.*
vin*g*tième,	*twentieth.*

In all the following, pronounce the *t* in *vingt* very strongly.

vin*g*t *et* unième,	*twenty-first.*
vin*g*t-deuxième,	*twenty-second.*
vin*g*t-troisième,	*twenty-third.*
vin*g*t-quatrième,	*twenty-fourth.*
vin*g*t-cinquième,	*twenty-fifth.*
vin*g*t-sixième,	*twenty-sixth.*
vin*g*t-se*p*tième,	*twenty-seventh.*
vin*g*t-huitième,	*twenty-eighth.*
vin*g*t-neuvième,	*twenty-ninth.*
trentième,	*thirtieth.*

In all the following, pronounce the *t* in *trente* very strongly

trente *et* unième,	*thirty-first.*
trente-deuxième,	*thirty-second.*
trente-troisième,	*thirty-third.*
trente-quatrième,	*thirty-fourth.*
trente-cinquième,	*thirty-fifth.*
trente-sixième,	*thirty-sixth.*
trente-se*p*tième,	*thirty-seventh.*
trente-huitième,	*thirty-eighth.*
trente-neuvième,	*thirty-ninth.*
quarantième,	*fortieth.*

In all the following, pronounce the *t* in *quarante* very strongly

quarante *et* unième,	*forty-first.*
quarante-deuxième,	*forty-second.*
quarante-troisième,	*forty-third.*
quarante-quatrième,	*forty-fourth.*
quarante-cinquième,	*forty-fifth.*
quarante-sixième,	*forty-sixth.*
quarante-*sept*ième,	*forty-seventh.*
quarante-huitième,	*forty-eighth.*
quarante-neuvième,	*forty-ninth.*

In all the following, pronounce the *t* in *cinquante* very strongly.

cinquantième,	*fiftieth.*
cinquante *et* unième,	*fifty-first.*
cinquante-deuxième,	*fifty-second.*
cinquante-troisième,	*fifty-third.*
cinquante-quatrième,	*fifty-fourth.*
cinquante-cinquième,	*fifty-fifth.*
cinquante-sixième,	*fifty-sixth.*
cinquante-*sept*ième,	*fifty-seventh.*
cinquante-huitième,	*fifty-eighth.*
cinquante-neuvième,	*fifty-ninth.*

In all the following, pronounce *soixant*, giving to the *ss* the strong and pure hissing sound of *s*; and pronounce the *t* very strongly.

soixantième,	*sixtieth.*
soixante *et* unième,	*sixty-first.*
soixante-deuxième,	*sixty-second.*
soixante-troisième,	*sixty-third.*
soixante-quatrième,	*sixty-fourth.*
soixante-cinquième,	*sixty-fifth.*
soixante-sixième,	*sixty-sixth.*
soixante-*sept*ième,	*sixty-seventh.*
soixante-huitième,	*sixty-eighth.*
soixante-neuvième,	*sixty-ninth.*
soixante *et* dixième,	*seventieth.*
soixante-onzième,	*seventy-first.*
soixante-douzième,	*seventy-second.*

soixante treizième,	*seventy-third.*
soixante-quatorzième,	*seventy-fourth.*
soixante-quinzième,	*seventy-fifth.*
soixante-seizième,	*seventy-sixth.*
soixante-dix-*sep*tième, (dis)	*seventy-seventh.*
soixante-dix-huitième, (diz)	*seventy-eighth.*
soixante-dix-neuvième, (diz)	*seventy-ninth.*
quatre-vin*g*tième,	*eightieth.*
quatre-vin*gt*-unième,	*eighty-first.*
quatre-vin*gt*-deuxième,	*eighty-second.*
quatre-vin*gt*-troisième,	*eighty-third.*
quatre-vin*gt*-quatrième,	*eighty-fourth.*
quatre-vin*gt*-cinquième,	*eighty-fifth.*
quatre-vin*gt*-sixième,	*eighty-sixth.*
quatre-vin*gt*-*sep*tième,	*eighty-seventh.*
quatre-vin*gt*-huitième,	*eighty-eighth.*
quatre-vin*gt*-neuvième,	*eighty-ninth.*
quatre-vin*gt*-dixième,	*ninetieth.*
quatre-vin*gt*-onzième,	*ninety-first.*
quatre-vin*gt*-douzième,	*ninety-second.*
quatre-vin*gt*-treizième,	*ninety-third.*
quatre-vin*gt*-quatorzième,	*ninety-fourth.*
quatre-vin*gt*-quinzième,	*ninety-fifth.*
quatre-vin*gt*-seizième,	*ninety-sixth.*
quatre-vin*gt*-dix-*sep*tième, (dis)	*ninety-seventh.*
quatre-vin*gt*-dix-huitième, (diz)	*ninety-eighth.*
quatre-vin*gt*-dix-neuvième, (diz)	*ninety-ninth.*
cen*t*ième,	*one hundredth.*
cen*t* unième,	*one hundred and first.*
cen*t* deuxième,	*one hundred and second.*
cen*t* troisième,	*one hundred and third.*
cen*t* quatrième,	*one hundred and fourth.*
cen*t* cinquième,	*one hundred and fifth, &c.*
millième,	*thousandth.*
millionième,	*millionth.*

Exercise 28.

N.B. The numbers cannot be reversed. Five and twenty must be translated into French by *vingt-cinq*, twenty-five.

Send me four and twenty oranges and six pine-apples. Give me twelve lemons. Here are (*voici*) five hundred pens. The second son. Six and thirty trees. The sixth day. Send me sixteen fans and eighteen hats. Three hundred and sixty-five days and six hours. The eleventh hour of the day. Four and twenty hours. Of the eleventh month. The first star. Eighty bolts. Eighty-eight nails. The first cent.

§ 19.—In mentioning the days of the month, the cardinal, instead of the ordinal, numbers are used; as, *le deux*, *le trois*, *le vingt et un de Janvier*, the second, third, twenty-first of January. Except the *first* of the month, which is *le premier du mois.*

Also, in speaking of the titles of kings, the cardinal, instead of the ordinal, numbers are used; as, *Louis Onze*, Louis the Eleventh; and the adjective is placed after the noun.

Except the *first* and *second*, which are *premier* and *second;* as, George the First, *George Premier;* William the Second, *Guillaume Second.*

Vocabulary.

January, *Janvier.*	July, *Juillet.*
February, *Fevrier.*	August, *Août.*
March, *Mars.*	September, *Septembre.*
April, *Avril.*	October, *Octobre.*
May, *Mai.*	November, *Novembre.*
June, *Juin.*	December, *Décembre.*

Remark.—There are three modes of writing the day of the month, viz.: *Le* 1*er de Juillet*, the first of July.

Le 1*er Juillet*, "

1*er Juillet*, "

And for letters, *Ce* 1*er de Juillet*, is sometimes used.

Exercise 29.

Write in words, The first of July, 1837. February 22nd, 1732 January 1st, 1800. George the Fourth. William the First. The fourth of July, 1776. The eleventh of November, 1111. December 31st, 1847. The twenty-first of July, 1812. Edward the Sixth. Louis the Sixteenth. Henry the Eighth. April 1st, 1212. The second of June, 1536. The first of August, 1848. Edward the First George the Second. George the Third.

Nombres Cardinaux employés avec *fois*.	*Cardinal Numbers used with the word* time.
une fois,	*once.*
deu*x* fois,	*twice.*
troi*s* fois,	*thrice* or *three times.*
quatre fois,	*four times.*
cin*q* fois,	*five times.*
si*x* fois,	*six times.*
se*pt* fois,	*seven times.*
hui*t* fois,	*eight times.*
neu*f* fois,	*nine times.*
di*x* fois,	*ten times.*
onze fois,	*eleven times.*
douze fois,	*twelve times.*
treize fois,	*thirteen times.*
quatorze fois,	*fourteen times.*
quinze fois,	*fifteen times.*
seize fois,	*sixteen times.*
dix-se*pt* fois, (dis)	*seventeen times.*
dix-hui*t* fois, (diz)	*eighteen times.*
dix-neu*f* fois, (diz)	*nineteen times.*
vin*gt* fois,	*twenty times.*
vin*gt* *et* une fois,	*twenty-one times.*
vin*gt*-deu*x* fois, &c	*twenty-two times, &c.*

CHAPTER IV.

ON THE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

§ 20.—The pronominal adjectives form a link between adjectives and pronouns. By some grammarians they are classed among the former, and by others among the latter. They are divided into three classes, viz., the possessive, the demonstrative, and the indefinite.

SECT. I. THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 21.—The possessive adjectives are these, viz.,

	Before any masculine noun, singular number.	Before a feminine noun, sing., beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated.	Before a feminine noun, sing., beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.	Before all nouns in the plural number.
My,	*mon,*	*ma,*	*mon,*	*mes,*
Thy,	*ton,*	*ta,*	*ton,*	*tes,*
His,	*son,*	*sa,*	*son,*	*ses,*
Her,	*son,*	*sa,*	*son,*	*ses,*
Its,	*son,*	*sa,*	*son,*	*ses,*
Our,	*notre,*	*notre,*	*notre,*	*nos,*
Your,	*votre,*	*votre,*	*votre,*	*vos,*
Their,	*leur,*	*leur,*	*leur,*	*leurs.*

§ 22.—These adjectives do not agree in gender and number with the antecedent, or possessor, as in English, but with the thing possessed. This is one of the difficulties of the young student, who frequently errs in supposing that *his* is always to

be translated by *son*, *her* by *sa*, &c. He must constantly have in mind the following rule, which serves for the demonstrative and the indefinite adjectives as well as the possessive.

RULE.—Every pronominal adjective must agree in number and gender with some *following* noun to which it refers.

Exercise 29.

My son, my child, my daughter, my school. Their work. His brother, her brother, his brothers, her brothers. His sister, her sister, his sisters, her sisters. His height, her height, its height. To thy ear. My brother's birds. The bones of your arm. Our jewels. Thy honor. His soul. Her faithful dog. Her eyes are black. (Write, She has the eyes black.) His history. Her history. The price of your fan. My playthings. I have written twice to thy sister. Read your lessons four times. Her hands are white. (Write, she has the hands white.)

§ 23.—The possessive adjective, like the article, must be repeated in French before every noun in the sentence before which it is *understood*, but not expressed in English; as, My father and mother, *Mon père et ma mère.*

The prepositions *à* and *de* must also be expressed before the possessive adjective, when they are *understood.*

Vocabulary.

Aunt,	*tante*, f.	Fruit,	*fruit*, m.
Boot,	*botte*, f.	Love, (noun,)	*amour*, m.
Carriage,	*voiture*, f.	Parent,	*parent*, m.
Chair,	*chaise*, f.	Pear,	*poire*, f.
Cherry,	*cerise*, f.	Purse,	*bourse*, f.
Coach,	*carrosse*, m	Raspberry,	*framboise*, f.
Color,	*couleur*, f.	Service,	*service*, m.
Currant,	*groseille*, f.	Thimble,	*dé*, m.
Flower,	*fleur*, f.	Uncle,	*oncle*, m.

Exercise 30

Thy pen and books. Give me your gloves and hat. The love of my brother and sister. To your sons and daughters. Its beauty and value. My hat, coat, and boots are on (*sur*) my chair. Our carriage and horses are at (*à*) your service. Their uncle and aunt are happy. Our apples are better than your oranges. Thy hands and feet. My pens and ink. The price of his cows and horses. Her modesty and prudence. Send (*envoie*) some fruits and flowers to thy mother and sisters. My brother Edward is my father's fifth son. Henry the fourth.

Exercise 31.

Edward and his sister are careful and attentive. Peter has no raspberries in his garden. George's friend has two grey horses. The eleventh of the first month. The vessel has lost its rudder. My brothers have eighty sheep and eighty-six cows. One hundred and twenty chairs. Two hundred and nineteen cents. Lucy laughs less than her sisters. The nights are now (*à présent*) shorter than the days. Our brothers and sisters are ready. The price of your boots and shoes. Do you love red currants better than white currants? Matilda's silk hat is on the round table.

Exercise 32.

The color of your currants and cherries is beautiful. My dear friends, all the fruits of my garden are at your service. Send the prettiest flowers to your uncle and aunt. Emily's parents are pleased with (*de*) their good daughter. Give me your ripest pears. Stephen and William have my poor dog. The king's coach is at the door of his palace. The garden has lost its beauty. My raspberries and currants are the finest. The rose is the queen of flowers. Send some fragrant flowers to the blind children. The weight of its fruits The old woman has cloth shoes.

SECT. II. THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 24.—*This, that, these, those,* when followed immediately by a noun, (or with only an adjective coming between them,) are demonstrative adjectives, and are translated into French thus:

	Before a noun of the masculine gender, beginning with a *consonant* or *h* aspirate.	Before a noun of the masculine gender, beginning with a *vowel* or *h* mute.	Before any noun of the feminine gender.
This,	*ce,*	*cet,*	*cette.*
That,	*ce,*	*cet,*	*cette.*
These,	*ces,*	*ces,*	*ces.*
Those,	*ces,*	*ces,*	*ces.*

Exercise 33.

This horse, that horse, these horses, those horses. The honor of that man. This woman's cows. The modesty of that girl. This boy's parents. The voices of those birds. That coat. That star. Send those lemons and pine-apples* to my house, and those grapes and peaches to your sisters. The son of that hero. What (*Quel*) is the price of those fans and gloves? Send these corals and crystals to your brother. The truth of that history. At (*à*) this hour. Put those pears on the table, and bring some silver knives.

* The remark § 23 respecting the repetition of the possessive adjective, is equally applicable to the demonstrative adjective.

§ 25.—As *ce, cet, cette, ces,* do not express the distinction implied in the English words *this* and *that, these* and *those,* it is necessary, when we wish to make this distinction, or to speak emphatically, to place *ci* after the noun to denote the nearest object, and *là,* to denote the most remote.

The particles *ci,* here, *là,* there, must be joined by a hyphen to the nouns which they follow, thus,

This horse, *ce cheval-ci;* that horse, *ce cheval-là.*

Exercise 34.

This pen is good. That pen is bad. Give that orange to your mother. These fine apples grew (*croissaient*) on those trees. Those strawberries. These cherries. The price of those plums and these pears. My dear sister, read this book; put that book on the table. This ink is black, that ink is blue. These boots are new; give me those boots. Send these lilies to Mary, and those violets to Lucy. My aunt's eyes are blue. The 29th of February will be her birthday, (*jour de naissance.*)

Vocabulary.

Advantage,	*avantage*, m.	Mahogany,	*acajou*, m.
Apron,	*tablier*, m.	Marble,	*marbre*, m
Baker,	*boulanger*, m.	Oak,	*chêne*, m.
Cap,	*bonnet*, m.	Physician,	*médecin*, m.
Carpenter,	*charpentier*, m.	Pleasure,	*plaisir*, m.
Farmer,	*fermier*, m.	Season,	*saison*, f.
Handkerchief,	*mouchoir*, m.	Shoemaker,	*cordonnier*, m.
Iron,	*fer*, m.	Steel,	*acier*, m.
Leaf,	*feuille*, f.	Velvet,	*velours*, m.
Leather,	*cuir*, m.	Watch,	*montre*, f.

Exercise 35.

These knives are of steel, those knives are of silver. That farmer has lazy children. This watch is better than that watch. Emily has lost her gold thimble. Give this cap to your aunt, and that apron to your sister. That physician has a marble house. The carpenter has our wooden mallet. Bring those peaches; these peaches are not ripe. The color of these pinks, and the perfume of those roses. Julia has a white silk hat. My watch and handkerchief are on that table. Silver is white. That carpenter has a leather apron and iron nails. Matilda has your gold watch.

SECT. III. THE INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES

§ 26.—The indefinite adjectives always relate to a noun or pronoun expressed in the same sentence. They are,

	Masc. sing.	Fem. sing.	Masc. plur.	Fem. plur.
Any,	*quelque,*	*quelque,*	*quelques,*	*quelques.*
All,	*tout,*	*toute,*	*tous,*	*toutes.*
Each,	*chaque,*	*chaque,*	——	——
Every,	*chaque,*	*chaque,*	——	——
	tout,	*toute,*	*tous,*	*toutes.*
No,	*aucun,*	*aucune,*	*aucuns,*	*aucunes.**
No,	*nul,*	*nulle,*	*nuls,*	*nulles.**
Other,	*autre,*	*autre,*	*autres,*	*autres.*
Same,	*même,*	*même,*	*mêmes,*	*mêmes.*
Some,	*quelque,*	*quelque,*	*quelques,*	*quelques.*
Such,	*tel,*	*telle,*	*tels,*	*telles.*
Several,	——	——	*plusieurs,*	*plusieurs.*
What,	*quel,*	*quelle,*	*quels.*	*quelles.*
Which,	*quel,*	*quelle,*	*quels,*	*quelles.*

* Used with nouns which have no singular form.

Remark 1.—*Some* and *any* are translated by *quelque, quelques*, only when the idea of *one out of several*, or a *few out of a large number*, is intended to be conveyed.

Remark 2.—*Chaque* must never be used unless followed by a noun.

Remark 3.—*Aucun* and *nul* require *ne* to be inserted immediately before the verb to complete the negation; thus, *Aucune saison ne vous plaît*, No season pleases you.

Exercise 36.

What beauty? Which boys! What beautiful roses! Each leaf. Which tree? Which apple? Which orange? At (*à*) what hour? What lessons have you? Every pleasure. Which flowers will you

have? To what school? No other woman. The same gloves. Some time. Some hours. Several playthings. Each boy. Every star. All the games. All the walnuts. Which bird? In (*dans*) what place? Such a (write *a such*) man. What works! Each pebble. Every crystal. All the days. All the nights. Several countries. The same wind. The same silk.

Exercise 37.

Sugar is sweet. Gold is yellow. Will you have some steel pens? This velvet is thicker than that velvet. These bolts are of iron, those bolts are of steel. Send my old shoes to that shoemaker. This table is of oak; that table is of mahogany. The beauty of its flowers. The trees have lost their leaves. The farmer's house is of wood. He has a cloth cap. Will you have those rings and bolts? Our baker makes good bread. Send those caps and handkerchiefs to the baker's daughter. What is the price of that marble table? What advantages have you?

Vocabulary.

Dish,	*plat*, m.	Needle,	*aiguille*, f.
Dollar,	*gourde*, f.	Pin,	*épingle*, f.
Fork,	*fourchette*, f.	Plate,	*assiette*, f.
Money,	*argent*, m.	Spoon,	*cueiller*, f.

Exercise 38.

Each season has its pleasures. I wish to buy (*acheter*) an orange; have you any cents to lend me (*à me prêter*)? Which watch have you? I have my silver watch. Some boys are in the garden; they are picking (*cueillent*) the cherries. Our country has its advantages, and other countries have their advantages. These forks are larger than those forks. Have you any money? I have some dollars in my purse. Will you have a steel ring or an iron ring? These pins and needles are good. Some fine days.

Note.—The possessive pronouns and demonstrative pronouns are placed next in order, in preference to the personal pronouns, that the pupil may be led to compare them with the possessive *adjectives*, and demonstrative *adjectives*, explained in this chapter. By carefully noticing the difference between them, he will avoid making many mistakes into which young students often fall.

CHAPTER V.

THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 27.—*Mine*, *thine*, *his*, *hers*, *its*, *ours*, *yours*, and *theirs* are not called, in English grammars, possessive pronouns; they are the possessive case of the personal pronouns *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, and *it*. But the French words by which they are translated are called *possessive pronouns;* they cannot be used without the article prefixed to them; they are never followed by a noun, but must agree in gender and number with the nouns which they *represent*.

	Masc. sing.	Fem. sing.	Masc. plur.	Fem. plur.
Mine,	*le mien,*	*la mienne,*	*les miens,*	*les miennes.*
Thine,	*le tien,*	*la tienne,*	*les tiens,*	*les tiennes.*
His,	*le sien,*	*la sienne,*	*les siens,*	*les siennes.*
Hers,	*le sien,*	*la sienne,*	*les siens,*	*les siennes.*
Its,	*le sien,*	*la sienne,*	*les siens,*	*les siennes.*
Ours,	*le nôtre,*	*la nôtre,*	*les nôtres,*	*les nôtres.*
Yours,	*le vôtre,*	*la vôtre,*	*les vôtres,*	*les vôtres.*
Theirs,	*le leur,*	*la leur,*	*les leurs,*	*les leurs.*

Remark.—In the following exercises the possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns are combined in the same sentence. The pupil will translate "My book and thine," thus; *Mon livre et le tien;* omitting the words "meaning thy book;" and as he proceeds in translating the Exercise, he will perceive the superior accuracy of the French language in these expressions. In the English sentence, "*My book and thine,*" the word *thine* does not indicate whether *one* book is intended, or *more* than one; but in the French sentence, "*mon livre et le tien,*" *le tien* shows that only *one* book is meant.

Exercise 39.

My book and thine,	*meaning*	*thy book.*
My pen and thine,	"	*thy pen.*
My books and thine,	"	*thy books.*
My pens and thine,	"	*thy pens.*
My horse and thine,	"	*thy horses.*
My cow and thine,	"	*thy cows.*
Thy dog and mine,	"	*my dog.*
Thy sister and mine,	"	*my sister.*
Thy brothers and mine,	"	*my brothers.*
Thy flowers and mine,	"	*my flowers.*
Thy dog and mine,	"	*my dogs.*
Thy dogs and mine,	"	*my dog.*
Thy sister and mine,	"	*my sisters.*
Thy sisters and mine,	"	*my sister.*
His father and hers,	"	*her father.*
Her father and his,	"	*his father.*
His mother and hers,	"	*her mother.*
Her mother and his,	"	*his mother.*
His son and hers,	"	*her sons.*
Her sons and his,	"	*his son.*
His daughter and hers,	"	*her daughters*
Her daughters and his,	"	*his daughter.*
His dog and theirs,	"	*their dog.*
His house and theirs,	"	*their house.*
His coat and theirs,	"	*their coats.*

Exercise 40.

His apple and theirs,	*meaning*	*their apples.*
Their friend and his,	"	*his friends.*
Their friends and hers,	"	*her friend.*
Their table and his,	"	*his table.*
Their tables and hers,	"	*her tables.*
Its weight and theirs,	"	*their weight.*
Its beauty and theirs,	"	*their beauty*

Its fruits and theirs,	*meaning*	*their fruits.*
Its colors and theirs,	"	*their colors*
Our king and yours,	"	*your king.*
Our queen and yours,	"	*your queen.*
Our pencils and yours,	"	*your pencil.*
Our pens and yours,	"	*your pen.*
Our knife and yours,	"	*your knives.*
Our house and yours,	"	*your houses.*
Our birds and yours,	"	*your birds.*
Our flowers and yours,	"	*your flowers.*
Your child and ours,	"	*our child.*
Your sister and ours,	"	*our sister.*
Your sons and ours,	"	*our son.*
Your daughters and ours,	"	*our daughter.*
Your hats and ours,	"	*our hats.*
Your purses and ours,	"	*our purses.*
Your aunt and ours,	"	*our aunts.*
Your uncle and ours,	"	*our uncles.*

§ 28.—When the possessive pronoun is preceded by the preposition *de* or *à*, the article must be contracted, as it is before a noun; as, Of thy book and mine, *de ton livre et* DU *mien.* To your father and ours, *à votre père et* AU *nôtre.*

To make this more intelligible to the young pupil, one of the possessive pronouns is here declined.

SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.	
le mien,	la mienne,	*mine.*
du mien,	de la mienne,	*of mine.*
au mien,	à la mienne,	*to mine.*

PLURAL.

les miens,	les miennes,	*mine.*
des miens,	des miennes,	*of mine*
aux miens,	aux miennes,	*to mine.*

Exercise 41.

The pupil will write the pronouns *le tien*, *le sien*, *le nôtre*, &c., declining them in gender and number like *le mien*.

Vocabulary.

Ancestor,	*aïeul*, m.	Map,	*carte*, f.
Cambric,	*batiste*, f.	Master,	*maître*, m.
Carpet,	*tapis*, m.	Muslin,	*mousseline*, f.
Copy-book,	*cahier*, m.	Paper,	*papier*, m.
Desk,	*pupitre*, m.	Penknife,	*canif*, m.
Exercise,	*thème*, m.	Pupil,	*élève*, m.
Friend,	*amie*, f.	Scholar,	*écolier*, m.
Gown,	*robe*, f.	Translation,	*traduction*, f. / *version*, f.
Key,	*clef*, f.		
Market,	*marché*, m.	Writing,	*écriture*, f.

Exercise 42.

You have the copy books of your brother and of mine. Send some flowers to your mother and mine, and some fruit to your father and mine. Bring some ink to your sister and ours. The price of our birds and yours. The beauty of my flowers, and the value of theirs. The color of my roses is more beautiful than the color of thine. Her lilies are white, ours are red, what (*quelle*) is the color of yours? The history of his ancestors and hers. Our strawberries are not so large as yours. Of thy pupil and mine. The color of my paper and of his.

Exercise 43.

Send some currants, raspberries and cherries to my brothers and to yours. I was writing to my aunt on my birth day, the 11th of February. My sister has seen the queen twice, three times, four times. William's penknife is larger than mine. Put the plates, knives, and forks, and some bread and butter on the table. His work is better than yours. Her cap, apron, and handkerchief are on the chair. William the Third. Mary's mother has my key. What fine currants! My uncle's house is white. Your carpet is handsomer than ours.

CHAPTER VI.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 29.—*This, that, these, those,* when not followed by a noun to which they refer, are demonstrative pronouns, and are thus translated into French:

This, / *That,*	standing for a noun of the masculine gender, is	*celui.*
This, / *That,*	standing for a noun of the feminine gender, is	*celle.*
These, / *Those,*	standing for a noun of the masculine gender, is	*ceux.*
These, / *Those,*	standing for a noun of the feminine gender, is	*celles.*
This,	when the word to which it refers has not been expressed, or when we speak of something in an indefinite manner, is	*ceci,* / *ce.*
That,	do. do. do	*cela,* / *ce.*

(1.) *Celui, celle, ceux, celles,* must always have an antecedent, and must be followed by a preposition or a relative pronoun.

(2.) *Ceci, cela,* stand for the word *thing* understood, but have no antecedent unless it be a phrase. They allude to things mentioned in a vague or indefinite manner. They are never followed by a preposition or a relative pronoun.

(3.) *Ce,* (demonstrative pronoun,) is never used, unless it is followed by the relative pronoun *qui, que, dont,* &c., or is the subject of some tense of the verb *être.*

Examples.

My glove and that of my friend
Mon gant et CELUI *de mon ami.*

Do this; do not do that.
Faites CECI; *ne faites pas* CELA.

That is not my fault.
CE *n'est pas ma faute.*

RULE.—The *demonstrative* pronouns, *celui, celle, ceux, celles,* must agree in gender and number with the noun which they represent.

Exercise 44.

The house of my brother and that of my sister. The farmer's horse and that of the baker. I have lost my jewels and those of my friend. His dog has torn (*déchiré*) my gown and that of my aunt. Give me that. This is not so good as that. He has lost all his spoons and those of his mother. The general's coach is green, that of the king is yellow. Send me your pens, and those of your little sister. My books are not so good as those of my brother. Your horse is black, that of your father is grey. That is very pretty. Give this to the children.

Exercise 45.

Your writing is better than that of your brother. Thy desk and that of thy friend. Read that; do not read this. Do you wish the cambric handkerchief or the silk handkerchief? That is my penknife. Give these keys and those of our house to my uncle. Send that muslin gown to Mary; she has torn her silk gown. These dishes and those of thy aunt. William has lost all his money and that of his brother. That will be your fault (*faute*). Our silver forks are not so large as those of your sister. This is better than that. Steel is grey.

§ 30.—In order to make a distinction between *this* and *that*, *these* and *those*, in French, the adverbs *ci*, here, and *là*, there, are added to the pronouns *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, and joined to them by a hyphen, thus:

	Masc. sing.	Fem. sing.
This, or this one,	*celui-ci*,	*celle-ci*.
That, or that one,	*celui-là*,	*celle-là*.
	Masc. plur.	Fem. plur.
These, or these ones,	*ceux-ci*,	*celles-ci*.
Those, or those ones,	*ceux-là*,	*celles-là*.

Exercise 46.

This ink is better than that. Those horses are handsomer than these. I prefer (*préfère*) these apples to those oranges. This cap is not so white as that. Will you have these pencils or those? These plums are not so large as those. I prefer this carpet to that one. You have torn this cloak, give me that. I have lost your gloves, take (*prenez*) these. This translation is better than that one. Leave (*laissez*) these pens, and take those. Take that paper, but (*mais*) leave this. This lesson is as long as that. That exercise is more difficult than this one.

Remark.—The particles *ci*, *là*, being added merely to make a distinction between objects, if the demonstrative pronoun is followed by a relative pronoun, or by a noun in the possessive case, the distinction is sufficiently clear, these particles would be useless, and must be omitted.

Exercise 47.

These maps are not so handsome as those which (*que*) we have Take these penknives, leave that one in my desk. These trees are finer than those which (*qui*) are in our garden. I prefer those copy-books to these. Give me your translation and that of the new scholar. My pupils and those of my friend. That watch is better than this. Leave these crystals, and give those to the boys. He has the farmer's sheep and those of his neighbor. My nephew has given to the master his exercises and those of the other scholars.

§ 31.—The demonstrative pronoun is often suppressed in English, and supplied by an apostrophe and an *s* added to the noun; but it must be expressed in French by *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, or *celles*, according to the gender and number of the noun to which it refers; as, My hat and my brother's, *Mon chapeau et celui de mon frère*, which is, literally, My hat and that of my brother.

Exercise 48.

You have torn my gown and my sister's. My bird is not so large (*grand*) as my brother's. Take your cloak and your brother's, but leave mine and my friend's. I have lost my pencils and my sister's. Your house is larger than your brother's. Bring me (*moi*) your pens and take your sister's. Send my books and my brother's to the school. My gloves are yellow, my sister's are white, my cousin's are black. The farmer's horses are stronger than the physician's. Our silver forks are at your service; my brother's are of steel. Emily's translation is better than her sister's.

Vocabulary.

Bookseller,	*libraire*, m.	Niece,	*nièce*, f.
Cake,	*gâteau*, m.	Piece, bit,	*morceau*, m.
Cousin,	*cousin*, m.	Ring,	*bague*, f.
Cousin,	*cousine*, f.	Saucer,	*soucoupe*, f.
Cheese,	*fromage*, m.	Shutter,	*volet*, m.
Cup,	*tasse*, f.	Slate,	*ardoise*, f.
Glass,	*verre*, m.	Stone,	*pierre*, f.
Lawyer,	*avocat*, m.	Thread,	*fil*, m.

Exercise 49.

Eat this cake and take (*portez*) that one to John. Will you have my carriage or my cousin's? Take away (*emportez*) my plate and leave my sister's on the table. Send your boots and mine to the shoemaker. I have lost my needles and Mary's. Our baker makes better bread than yours. The farmer will have cabbages. The carpenters will have nails. Our poor neighbor has no wood. Send him (*envoyez-lui*) my money and my niece's, and your coat and my nephew's. The school is in the stone house.

§ 32.—*He, she,* and *they, the one, the ones,* when followed by *who, whom,* or *that,* are translated into French by the demonstrative pronouns *celui, celle, ceux,* or *celles,* thus:

He who,	*celui qui.*	He whom,	*celui que.*
She who,	*celle qui.*	She whom,	*celle que.*
They who, (masc.)	*ceux qui.*	They whom, (masc.)	*ceux que.*
They who, (fem.)	*celles qui.*	They whom, (fem.)	*celles que.*
The one who, (masc.)	*celui qui.*	The one whom, (masc.)	*celui que.*
The one who, (fem.)	*celle qui.*	The one whom, (fem.)	*celle que.*
The ones who, (masc.)	*ceux qui.*	The ones whom, (mas.)	*ceux que.*
The ones who, (fem.)	*celles qui.*	The ones whom, (fem.)	*celles que.*

N.B. When *which* or *that,* follows *the one, the ones,* &c., it is to be translated by *qui,* if it is the subject or nominative of the following verb; but by *que,* if it is the object of the verb.

Exercise 50.

He who dines (*dîne*) with us is my cousin's best friend. She who is virtuous is happy. They who are lazy are unhappy. They who are quick are not always (*toujours*) attentive. She whom we love is amiable. He whom we adore (*adorons*) is almighty (*tout-puissant*). My hat is not so new as the one that you have. Your slate is better than the one that I have. These pine-apples are finer than the ones which you have bought (*achetés.*) I prefer these strawberries to the ones in the (*du*) market.

Remark.—The remark made on page 30 respecting the use and place of nouns employed as adjectives, to denote the material of which any thing is made, is applicable also to nouns used to describe *the one, the ones;* as, Will you have the silver thimble or the gold one? *Voulez-vous le dé d'argent, ou celui d'or?*

But if the word that describes *the one, the ones,* is an adjective, and not a noun used as an adjective, the words *one, ones,* are not translated into French; as, Do you wish the white handkerchief, or the red one? *Voulez-vous le mouchoir blanc, ou le rouge?*

Exercise 51.

Give me the silver watch, and send the gold one to my friend. What knives have you? We have the steel ones. Will you have

the glass dish or the silver one? I prefer the oak chairs to the mahogany ones. Have you the old coat or the new one? Give me my silk gown. Do you wish the blue one, or the black one? Send the cloth cloak to John, and the silk one to his sister. What horses have you? I have the grey ones, and your nephew has the black one. I prefer this steel pen to the gold one. What apples do you wish? Give me the ripest ones.

§ 33.—*The former* is translated by

celui-là,	when it refers to a noun	masculine,	singular number.	
celle-là,	"	"	feminine,	"
ceux-là,	"	"	masculine,	plural number.
celles-là,	"	"	feminine,	"

The latter is translated by

celui-ci,	when it refers to a noun	masculine,	singular number.	
celle-ci,	"	"	feminine,	"
ceux-ci,	"	"	masculine,	plural number.
celles-ci,	"	"	feminine,	"

Exercise 52.

John and William are my youngest pupils; the former is amiable and studious, the latter is lazy and deceitful. Mary and Lucy are my friends; the former is frank, the latter is sweet-tempered (*douce.*) You have white roses and red roses; I prefer the former. I have a grey horse and a black horse; take the former, and send the latter to my brother. Bring me some peaches and plums, the former are better than the latter. Your garden has some advantages that mine has not. These slates are larger than those. You ought (*devriez*) to make a better translation than that.

CHAPTER VII.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

SECT. I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

§ 34.—The personal pronouns in the nominative case, are expressed in French thus:

I,	*je, moi.*
Thou,	*tu, toi.*
He,	*il, lui.*
She,	*elle.*
It,	*il, elle.*
We,	*nous.*
You,	*vous.*
They, when the French word for which it stands is *masculine*, is	*ils, eux.*
They, standing for a noun of the *feminine* gender, is	*elles.*

Remark 1.—As there is no neuter gender in the French language, there is no word corresponding to our English pronoun *it*, which must be translated by *il*, he, *elle*, she, &c.

It, when it is the *subject* or *nominative* of a verb, and the French word for which it stands is *masculine*, is	*il.*
It, when it is the *subject* or *nominative* of a verb, and the French word for which it stands is *feminine*, is	*elle.*
It, used in an impersonal sense, that is, without reference to any substantive mentioned before, is	*il* or *ce.*

Examples.

Read this book; IT is interesting.	*Lisez ce livre;* IL *est intéressant.*
Lend me this pen; IT is good.	*Prêtez-moi cette plume;* ELLE *est bonne.*
IT rains.	IL *pleut.*
IT is noble to forget one's self.	IL *est beau de s'oublier.*
He wastes his time; IT is a pity.	*Il perd son temps;* C'*est dommage*

Remark 2.—*It* is expressed by *ce*, before any tense of the verb *être*, *to be*, when that verb is followed by a substantive or a pronoun; as, It is my son, *C'est mon fils;* It is I, *C'est moi.*

Remark 3.—*He*, *she*, and *they*, before the verb *to be*, followed by a substantive, are generally expressed by *ce;* as, He is my nephew, *C'est mon neveu.*

Remark 4.—*He*, *she*, and *they*, when followed by *who*, *whom*, or *that*, are translated by *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, or *celles*, as has been explained, § 32.

§ 35.—The student must bear in mind that when a French pronoun has two forms, (as *je* and *moi* for *I*,) these forms are not to be used indifferently, but according to the following directions.

§ 36.—When *I*, *thou*, *he*, or *they*, is the subject nominative of a verb, and precedes the verb in a sentence which is not interrogative, or follows it in an interrogative sentence,

I	is translated by	*je.*	*He,*	is translated by	*il.*
Thou	" "	*tu.*	*They,*	standing for a masculine noun, by	*ils.*

§ 37.—But in exclamations, or after the words, "*it is*, *it was*," &c., or in connection with another pronoun, or where a distinction is intended between persons, or after *than* or *as* in a comparison of equality, superiority, or inferiority, or in reply to a question, the verb being omitted, or, when separated from the verb of which it is the subject by any word except the personal pronoun, which is the object of the verb, or by the adverb of negation,

I	is translated by	*moi.*	*He,*	is translated by	*lui.*
Thou	" "	*toi.*	*They,* masc.,	"	*eux*

Examples.

I! go to the city?	*Moi! aller à la ville?*
It is I.	*C'est moi.*
I who love.	*Moi qui aime.*

He and I are going to the city.	*Lui et moi nous allons à la ville.*
Richer than I.	*Plus riche que moi.*
Who calls Mary? I.	*Qui appelle Marie? Moi.*
I surely will remain faithful to thee.	*Moi, à coup sûr, te resterai fidèle.*
He alone knows my secrets.	*Lui seul connaît mes secrets.*

Vocabulary.

Country,	*campagne*, f.	Street,	*rue*, f.
Fast, adv.,	*vite*,	To-day,	*aujourd'hui.*
Friendship,	*amitié*, f.	To-morrow,	*demain.*
Here,	*ici.*	When,	*quand.*
If,	*si.*	Where,	*où.*
Often, adv.,	*souvent.*	Yesterday,	*hier.*

Exercise 53.

The boys are gathering apples: will they give the apples to the poor woman? John is able to read better than they. My sisters are here; they are writing to their aunt. It was I. Do you sell cream? I sell milk, but my brother sells cream. I! drink (inf. mood) wine! Their coach is old; but it is as good as if it were (ind. mood imp.) new. It is he. These peaches would be better if they were riper. Am I not worthy of Mary's friendship? I, who am her sister. It is she. Is it you?

Exercise 54.

Do you come from school? I! I have not been at school this month. Does he run fast? Does she sew well? He and I, we are writing to John. I, who go so (*si*) often to the city, I prefer the country. Mary is more studious than thou. I! eat (inf. mood) thy apples? Happier than he. I was in the house, and he, he was in the street. I have a peach, but it is not ripe. Do you see that house? it is for sale (*à vendre.*) He writes better than she As well as I. Better than they. It is our neighbor's house.

Place of the nominative in interrogative sentences.

§ 38—(1.) In interrogative sentences, if the subject is a *pronoun*, it is always placed after the verb; as, Shall we come back to-morrow? *Reviendrons-nous demain?*

(2.) In interrogative sentences, when a *noun* is the subject nominative of the verb, the noun is placed before the verb, and the pronoun *il*, *elle*, *ils* or *elles*, according to the gender and number of the noun, is placed immediately after the verb; as, Is your father here? *Votre père est-il ici?* Does your sister love flowers? *Votre sœur aime-t-elle les fleurs?*

(3.) When, in interrogative sentences, the verb which is followed by the pronoun *il*, *elle*, or *on*, ends with a vowel, the letter *t*, preceded and followed by a hyphen, is placed between the verb and the pronoun; as, Will she return with us? *Reviendra-t-elle avec nous?*

(4.) If the verb is in one of the compound tenses, the personal pronoun should be placed after the *auxiliary;* as, Has your father come? *Votre père est-il venu?*

(5.) When, the nominative of the verb being a noun, the sentence begins with an interrogative adverb, such as *where*, *when*, &c., the noun used as a nominative can be placed after the verb, as in English; or before the verb, as directed above, (2) with the personal pronoun placed after the verb; as,

When will your brother come? { *Quand viendra votre frère?* or, *Quand votre frère viendra-t-il?*

N. B. The pupil must be careful not to put the interrogative adverb between the nominative case and the verb.

Exercise 55.

Has William a knife? Have not my brothers a beautiful dog? Does the boy sell apples? Are they ripe? Is your hat worth a dollar? Are the children throwing stones? Is Lucy leading the old woman? Is Mary calling her sister? Is the book on the table? Is the pen good? Were the boys running fast? When will thy father come? Where is my cloak? Is my dog in the neighbor's garden? Where is my dog? Who (*qui*) was running after (*après*) my uncle's horse? It was I. I run faster than he.

Exercise 56.

Are the boys eating cherries or currants? You have fine raspberries. Has your sister eaten hers? When will thy aunt read that book? She is sick. Send some caps and aprons to Mary's mother, the 21st of this month. He and I were running very (*bien*) fast. Richer than he. I prefer these pears to those. Are your horses black? These plums are finer than those. Are those apples ripe? Where are my sisters? They are with (*avec*) their sick friend. That is my father's lawyer.

Remark.—Not, used with a verb, is expressed in French by placing *ne* before the verb, and *pas* after it. *Ne* is written *n'* before a vowel or a silent *h*. When the verb is in a compound tense, *pas* must be placed between the auxiliary and the participle.

Exercise 57.

Have you not my sister's pencils? Has she not found hers? The men are not gathering the fruit. They will not come often. They are not running. Does not Lucy love cherries? I, I shall not beat the dog. The girls do not write fast, but they write well. I, who am not her friend. Will not your sister come to-morrow? We are not idle. Do not the boys owe much (*beaucoup*) to their friends? We do not eat pine-apples. Mary is not revengeful. Do not thy brothers give their money to the poor (*plur.*)? Do not eat fast Is that table mahogany?

SECT. II. PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN THE POSSESSIVE CASE.

§ 39.—*Mine, thine, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs,* which are in English the possessive case of the personal pronouns, *I, thou, he, she* and *it,* have been explained on page 50.

§ 40.—But when *mine, thine, his,* &c., are used with the verb *to be* to convey simply an idea of property,

Mine	is translated by	*à moi.*	*Ours*	is	*à nous.*
Thine	" "	*à toi.*	*Yours*	is	*à vous.*
His	" "	*à lui.*	*Hers*	is	*à elle.*

Theirs, standing for a masculine noun, is *à eux.*
Theirs, " " feminine " *à elles.*

Example.

Is this pen yours? *Cette plume est-elle à vous?*
No, it is not mine. *Non, elle n'est pas à moi.* (Meaning simply it does not belong to me.)

Exercise 58.

Is that garden yours? No, it belongs (*appartient* or *est*) to my brother. Give that rose to thy sister. It is not mine. Where are my gloves? Those gloves are thine. These jewels are not ours. Has Mary a fan? The fan which is on the table is hers. The boys are gathering apples. All the red apples are theirs. Which horse belongs to William? The black horse is his. Those knives are theirs. Are they not ours? Will you have the gold thimble or the silver one? The former is mine; the latter belongs to Emily. Put that money in my silk purse.

SECT. III. PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN THE OBJECTIVE CASE.

§ 41.—The personal pronouns in the objective case are expressed in French thus:

Me,	*me, moi,*
Thee,	*te, toi.*
Him,	*le, lui.*
Her,	*la, elle.*
It,	*le, la.*
Us,	*nous.*
You,	*vous.*
Them,	*les, eux, elles.*

N.B. The pupil must carefully attend to the following directions.

It { when it is the direct object of a verb, and the French word for which it stands, is *masculine*, is } *le.*

It { when it is the direct object of a verb, and the French word for which it stands, is *feminine*, is, } *la.*

Them { when the French word for which it stands, is *masculine*, is { *les* and *eux.*

Them { when the French word for which it stands, is *feminine*, is { *les* and *elles.*

Remark.—*Him*, *her*, and *them*, when followed by *who*, *whom*, or *that*, are translated by *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*. See § 32.

§ 42.—Before the pupil can write correctly the French pronouns in the objective case, he must clearly understand the difference between the *direct* and the *indirect* object of a verb.

A pronoun or a noun is the *direct* object of a verb, when it is governed by that verb without the assistance of a preposition, expressed or understood; as, *I see him.*

A pronoun or a noun is the *indirect* object of a verb when the help of a preposition, expressed or understood, is needed to complete the sense; as, *I speak to him.*

Personal Pronouns used as direct objects of a verb.

§ 43.—*Me,*	when it is the direct object of a verb, is		*me.*
Thee,	"	"	"	*te.*
Him,	"	"	"	*le.*
Her,	"	"	"	*la.*
It,	" and standing for a masculine noun,		*le.*
It,	" standing for a feminine noun,		*la.*
Them,			*les.*

§ 44.—Except, when the verb is in the imperative mood used *affirmatively,*

Me	is translated by	*moi.*
Thee	" "	*toi.*

N.B. When the verb in the imperative mood is used *negatively,*

Me	is translated by	*me.*
Thee	"	*te.*

Personal Pronouns used as indirect objects of a verb.

N.B. The preposition *to* is always expressed or understood before these pronouns in English, but is *not expressed* in French except after reflected verbs and a few others.

§ 45.—*To me,*	when it is the indirect object of a verb, is			*me.*
To thee,	"	"	"	*te.*
To him,	"	"	"	*lui.*
To her,	"	"	"	*lui.*
To it,	"	"	"	*y.*
To us,	"	"	"	*nous.*
To you,	"	"	"	*vous.*
To them, (speaking of persons,)			"	*leur.*
To them, (speaking of things,)			"	*y.*

§ 46.—Except, when the verb is in the imperative mood used *affirmatively*,

To me	is translated by	*moi.*
To thee	"	*toi.*

N.B. When the verb in the imperative mood is used *negatively*,

To me	is translated by	*me.*
To thee	"	*te.*

Personal Pronouns in the objective case, governed by a preposition, and not the object of a verb.

§ 47.—*Me*,	when it is governed by a preposition and is *not* the object of a verb, is	*moi.*
Thee,	" " "	*toi.*
Him,	" " "	*lui.*
Her,	" " "	*elle.*
Them, "	standing for a masculine noun,	*eux.*
Them, "	feminine "	*elles.*

Remark.—*It* is seldom expressed in French after a preposition. For example; Do you put your hat on the table, or under it? is translated thus: *Mettez-vous votre chapeau sur la table ou dessous?*

To it. See § 45.

§ 48.—*Of, it, from it,*
Of him, from him,
Of her, from her,
Of them, from them, } are translated by *en.*

Remark.—*Some* and *any*, when they are not followed by a noun, are used like pronouns, and are translated by *en*, as,

Give me some,	*Donnez m'en.*
I have not any,	*Je n'en ai pas.*

SECT. IV. THE PLACE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS GOVERNED BY VERBS.

§ 49.—A personal pronoun governed by a verb, either as its direct or indirect object, must be placed immediately *before* the verb; as,

He sees *me*,	Il *me* voit,
thee,	Il *te* voit,
us,	Il *nous* voit,
you,	Il *vous* voit,
him,	Il *le* voit.
I speak *to him*,	Je *lui* parle,
to her,	Je *lui* parle,
to them,	Je *leur* parle,
of it,	J'*en* parle,
of them,	J'*en* parle.
Does he see *him* or *it?*	*Le* voit-il?
her or *it?*	*La* voit-il?
them?	*Les* voit-il?

§ 50.—But when the verb is in the *imperative* mood used *affirmatively*, the pronoun governed by the verb must be placed *after* it; as, Send him, *Envoyez-le.*

N. B.—When the verb in the imperative mood is used *negatively*, the pronoun governed by a verb must be placed *before* the verb as in § 49.

Examples.

Send *us*,	Envoyez-*nous*.
her,	Envoyez-*la*.
them,	Envoyez-*les*.
Speak *to him*,	Parlez-*lui*.
to her,	Parlez-*lui*.
to them,	Parlez-*leur*.
Do not send *us*,	Ne *nous* envoyez pas.
him,	Ne *l'*envoyez pas.
them,	Ne *les* envoyez pas.
Do not speak *to him*,	Ne *lui* parlez pas.
to her,	Ne *lui* parlez pas.
to them,	Ne *leur* parlez pas.

§ 51.—(1.) When a verb governs *two* personal pronouns, one of which is its *direct* object, and the other its *indirect* object, the pronoun in the *first* or *second* person is placed before the one in the *third* person; that is, *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, precede *le*, *la*, *les*, *y*, or *en*.

(2.) If both pronouns are in the third person, the *direct* object is placed *before* the *indirect* object; that is, *le*, *la*, *les*, precede *lui*, *leur*, *y*, or *en*.

(3.) When *y* and *en* occur in the same sentence, *y* precedes *en*.

Examples.

He gave *him* or *it to me*,	Il *me le* donna.
He gave *her* or *it to me*,	Il *me la* donna.
He gave *them to me*,	Il *me les* donna.
He gave *me some*,	Il *m'en* donna.
He gave *him* or *it to thee*,	Il *te le* donna.
He gave *thee some*,	Il *t'en* donna.
He gave *him* or *it to us*,	Il *nous le* donna.
He gave *her* or *it to you*,	Il *vous la* donna.
He gave *us some*,	Il *nous en* donna.
He gave *you some*,	Il *vous en* donna.
He recalls *him* or *it to himself*,	Il *se le* rappelle.
He recalls *her* or *it to herself*,	Il *se la* rappelle.
He recalls *them to himself*,	Il *se les* rappelle.
He applies *himself to it*,	Il *s'y* applique.
He sent *me there*,	Il *m'y* envoya.*
He sent *him* or *her to me there*,	Il *me l'y* envoya.
He sent *me some there*,	Il *m'y en* envoya.
He sent *us there*,	Il *nous y* envoya.
He sent *some to us there*,	Il *nous y en* envoya.
He gives *it to him* or *to her*,	Il *le lui* donne.
He gives *it to them*,	Il *le leur* donne.
He gives *them to them*,	Il *les leur* donne.
He sent *them to them there*,	Il *les leur y* envoya.
He sent *some to him there*,	Il *lui y en* envoya.
He sent *some there*,	Il *y en* envoya.
He sent *some to them there*,	Il *leur y en* envoya.

* *En* and *y* are also *adverbs* of place, *en* meaning *thence*, and *y*, *there*, *thither*, and they follow the same rules as the pronouns.

§ 52.—But, when a verb in the imperative mood, used *affirmatively*, governs *two* pronouns, these pronouns are placed *after* that verb, in the following order:

Le, *la*, *les*, are placed immediately after the verb.

Lui, *leur*, *moi*, *nous*, *vous*, come after *le*, *la*, or *les*.

Y precedes *moi*, *toi*, *le*, and *la*.

Y follows *nous*, *vous*, and *les*.

En comes the last.

Examples.

Send *him to me*,	Envoyez-*le-moi*.
Send *her to me*,	Envoyez-*la-moi*.
Send *them to me*,	Envoyez-*les-moi*.
Send *him or it to them*,	Envoyez-*le-leur*.
Send *them to them*,	Envoyez-*les-leur*.
Send *them to him*,	Envoyez-*les-lui*.
Send *me there*,	Envoyez-*y-moi*.
Send *us there*,	Envoyez-*nous-y*.
Send *some there*,	Envoyez-*y-en*.
Warn *him of it*,	Avertissez-*l'en*.
Warn *them of it*,	Avertissez-*les-en*.
Compel *me to it*,	Forcez-*y-moi*.
Compel *us to it*,	Forcez-*nous-y*.
Give *me some*,	Donnez-*m'en*.
Give *us some*,	Donnez-*nous-en*.
Transport *yourself there*,	Transportez-*vous-y*.
Inform *yourself of it*,	Informez-*vous-en*.
Apply *yourself to it*,	Appliquez-*vous-y*.

N. B. When the verb in the imperative mood is used *negatively*, the pronouns governed by the verb must be placed *before* the verb, as in § 51.

Do not send *him to me*,	Ne *me l'*envoyez pas.
Do not send *me any*,	Ne *m'en* envoyez pas.
Do not send *us there*,	Ne *nous y* envoyez pas.
Do not give *me any*,	Ne *m'en* donnez pas.
Do not give *them any*,	Ne *leur en* donnez pas.
Do not warn *him of it*,	Ne *l'en* avertissez pas.
Do not warn *them of it*,	Ne *les en* avertissez pas.

A TABLE

Showing at one view the place of Personal Pronouns in the objective case.

	Before the verb. § 43, 45. 49, 51.	After the verb. § 44, 46, 50, 52.	After a preposition § 47.
Me, / *to Me,*	Me,	Moi,	Moi.
Thee, / *to Thee,*	Te,	Toi,	Toi.
Himself, / *Herself,* / *Itself,* / *Themselves,*	Se,		Soi.
Us, / *to Us,*	Nous,	Nous,	Nous.
You, / *to You,*	Vous,	Vous,	Vous.
Him, / *It;* mas.	Le,	Le,	Lui.
Her, / *It;* fem.	La,	La,	Elle.
Them,	Les,	Les,	Eux, m. / Elles, f.
to Him, / *to Her,*	Lui,	Lui.	
to Them,	Leur,*	Leur.*	
of, / *from,* *It, Him,* / *Her, Them,*	En,	En.	
to It, / *to Them,*	Y,	Y.	

* The personal pronoun *leur, to them,* should not be mistaken for the possessive pronoun, *leur,* meaning *their;* the former never takes the sign of the plural, while the latter is written *leurs* when it agrees with a plural noun.

§ 53.—If the objective pronouns are governed by a verb compounded of the auxiliary verbs *avoir* or *être* and a past participle, they must be placed *before* the auxiliary verb, and not between the auxiliary and the participle; as,

He has seen *me,*	*Il* M'*a vu.*
He has seen *thee,*	*Il* T'*a vu.*
We have seen *him,*	*Nous* L'*avons vu.*

Exercise 59.

See § 41, 42, 43, 49.

Do you see John? I see him. Where is my book? I do not see it. Does he see me? Does he see thee? Does he see us? Does he see you? William is at the door; do you see him? We see him. I have lost my pencil, do you see it? He does not see me. Does he not see thee? I see you. I have a good pen, and I will give it to my sister. I have bought (*acheté*) a gold thimble, and I am going to give it to Lucy. I know him. I know her. I know them. Do you not know me? Do you not know us? We do not know him You do not know her. Do you see her often?

Exercise 60.

See § 41, 42, 43, 45, 49, 53.

She sees me. She does not see thee. We do not see him. We see her. You see them. She knows me. She speaks to me. William sees thee; he is speaking to thee. Mary sees us; she is speaking to us. I know him; I will send him some money. Your father will punish you; he will write to you. He sees her; but he does not speak to her. Does Edward see you? Have you seen Stephen to-day? I have not seen him to-day. I shall see him to-morrow. He has not seen me. Has he not seen you?

Exercise 61.

See § 41, 42, 43, 45, 49, 53.

Do you give me two pine-apples? I give you three pine-apples. I will follow thee. He follows us. She calls them. Do you speak to me? He is writing to us. We shall punish the boys. Why do you punish them? Those fans are not mine, nor (*ni*) thine, nor hers. Whose (*à qui*) are they? Eat a peach; this is sweeter than that. Send these violets and snow-drops to Lucy. Give me the former. Where is the physician? Have you not seen him? I saw him yesterday, but I did not speak to him. Has your brother written to him? He has written to him, but he has not sent him the letter, (*lettre*, f.)

Vocabulary.

N.B. The numbers in the Vocabulary designate the verb in the Appendix, which is to be used as a model.

Lamp,	*lampe*, f.	Pocket,	*poche*, f.
Lend,	*prêter*. (3)	Shut, verb,	*fermer*. (3)
Light, verb,	*allumer*. (3)	Speak,	*parler*. (3)
Perfectly,	*parfaitement*.	Why,	*pourquoi*.

Carry,	meaning to lead,	*Mener*, (3)	applied to infants and inanimate objects,	*Porter*. (3)
Take,		*Mener*, (3)		*Porter*. (3)
Bring,		*Amener*, (3)		*Apporter*. (3)
Take away,		*Emmener*, (3)		*Emporter*. (3)

Exercise 62.

See § 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 49, 50.

Shut the door. Shut it. Let us shut it. Let us gather the roses. Let us gather them. Gather them. Write thy letter. Send it to thy brother.. Light the lamp. Light it. Do not light it. I am writing a letter; give it to William. Send me some books. I do not see them. She writes to me often. Write to me every day, (*tous les jours.*) Were you calling me? Tell me where she is. I will write to them to-morrow. Mary is at the door. I see her. Call her. Follow me. Believe us. Take away this; leave that.

Exercise 63.

See § 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 49, 50.

Have you any grapes? Send them to the market. No, I will send them to my aunt. Do not give them to the children. Where are the good pens? They are on the table. I prefer them to yours. Put them in my copy-book. Do not put them in your pocket. Write to her. Do not write to her. Send her to my sister. Do not send her. I have a new book. I will give it to Lucy. Give it to Mary. Do not give it to Lucy. Didst thou not give Henry an orange? He has eaten his, and that of his sister. The former was (*était*) larger than the latter. My flowers are not so pretty as Mary's

Exercise 64.

See § 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52.

You have my book, give it to me. You have Mary's gold pen, give it to me. Give them to me. Have you any money? Lend it to us. And a purse also? Lend it to us. Lend them to us. You have French books and Italian books; lend us some of them. My brother will send them to you, or he will bring them to you himself, (*lui-même*) Send them to-morrow. Are you acquainted with my uncle? I am acquainted with him. I know my lesson. Dost thou know it perfectly? We do not know ours. What a beautiful pine-apple! carry it to my sister. Bring some to me. Do not take it away.

Exercise 65.

See § 41, 42, 43, 45, 48, 51, 53.

You have my pencil. John gave* it to me. He did not give* it to you. Have you Mary's pen? She lent* it to me. She will lend it to thee. Edward sends him to me. We send him to thee. I send them to you. He sends her to us. Lewis gave* me some. Did he give* you some? I gave* them to you. William sent us there. He has some new books. He lent* them to Edward. He lent* them to me. He sent them to me there. He sent them to us there. He sent some to us there. I will speak to her of it. We have seen him.

Exercise 66.

See § 50, 52, 53.

Did you give* some money to the blind woman? I gave* her a dollar. I gave* it to her. I gave* her some. Lucy lent* her some. Mary will send her some. Give her a new hat. Julia has given it to her. He has given it to them. Bring a pencil to Mary. Bring it to her. Take my purse to Julia. Take it to her. Carry these oranges to your aunt. Carry them to her. Take them away. Bring your sister here. Bring her to me.

* The pupil will translate these verbs by the compound of the Present Tense, or Passé Indéfini. See the Remarks on that Tense in the Appendix, page 137, and the Remark on the following page.

Remark.—The past participle, when preceded by the verb *have*, agrees in gender and number with the pronoun which is the *direct* object of the verb, when that object is placed before the verb; as,

He has seen her,	Il L'a VUE.
He has seen them,	Il LES a VUS.

Exercise 67.

Have you seen her to-day? I have taken her to her brother's house. He has given her the books. He had given them to me. Emily has seen him. She has not seen us. Have you my pen? I have lent it to Mary. Does John sell butter? He sells it. He sells it to me. He does not give it to me. Do you give me the cream? I give it. I give it to you. I do not sell it to you. Does not Mary give it to me? I give you the best coffee. Do we not give it to her? Do you give it to your brother? I do not give it to him; I give it to thee. Carry thy books to school. Carry them there.

54.—*En* is expressed in French in many instances where *of it* or *of them* is understood in English, especially when the sentence ends with a cardinal number or any word expressing quantity; as,

How many inkstands have you? I have three.
*Combien d'encriers avez-vous? J'*EN *ai trois.*

Exercise 68.

I had five penknives, but I have lost two. If you like (*aimez*) those apples, take some; we have a great many (*beaucoup.*) My mother bought twelve handkerchiefs, and she gave me six. I picked three roses, and I will give you two. Carry those pinks to your sisters. Carry them to them. Carry them some. Take that blind man to your house. Take away my horse. No, (*non*) bring him to me. You will do that better than I. We were not speaking of them. I wish some good ink. Do you wish black ink? I will give you three dollars, and I will lend you five. You have plums and pears. I prefer the latter.

Vocabulary.

Apply,	*s'adresser.**	There, (with a verb,)	*y.*
Compel,	*forcer.* (67)	Think,	*penser.* (3)
Give back,	*rendre.* (7)	Trust,	*se fier.**
Promise, verb,	*promettre.* (35)	Warn,	*avertir.* (4)
Lead, verb,	*mener.* (3)	With,	*avec.*
Show, verb,	*montrer.* (3)	Without,	*sans.*
Stick,	*bâton.* m.	Umbrella,	*parapluie,* m.

Return, (to give back,) *rendre.* (7)
Return, (to come back,) *revenir.* (61)
Return, (to go back,) *retourner.* (3)

* These are Reflected verbs, and are conjugated like *Se Promener* in the Appendix.

Exercise 69.

I have brought you the book which (*que*) I had promised you. Where is it? Show it to me. I will show it to you when you have (*future*) finished your work. Give it to me. It does not belong to me. I will lend it to you. Lend it to me now; I will return it to you to-morrow. Will you compel us to it? Have you warned them of it? I lend you my umbrella. Does he lend you his? Send him there. Send them there. We do not speak to them of it. Show me the lesson. Have you shown it to them? Who will open the door? I. Send me mutton, beef, and veal. He, he will not do it to-day.

Exercise 70.

I give back to you your slate. I give it back to you. Have you returned to me my pen-knife? I will return it to you to-morrow. I sell it to you. You have a good pen. Do you give it to me? I give it to you; I do not sell it to you. Henry warned him of it. We warned them of it. I sent him. I sent him to her. I sent him to her there. We sent him to them there. We sent them to him there. John sent them to her there. You sent him to them. The queen sent her to them. My aunt sent her to them there. Does he take his children to school? He takes them there every day. Do they take their books there? They send some there to me

§ 55.—The pupil has been taught § 45 that personal pronouns preceded by the preposition *to* are considered in French the indirect objects of the verb with which they are connected, and the preposition *à* is understood, or rather comprised in the pronoun.

But after the verbs *aller*, *venir*, and some other verbs of motion, some of the Neuter verbs, and all the Reflected verbs, the preposition cannot be comprised in the pronoun, as in § 45; it must be expressed, and consequently the pronoun must come after the verb, and must be translated into French as directed in § 47.

Exercise 71.

Your uncle is here, apply to him. If you wish help, (*secours*, m.) come to me; do not go to them. Trust to him, but do not trust to her. Think upon (*à*) me. I will think of (*à*) thee. Were you speaking to him, or to her? I trust thee, and I shall trust thee always. If you wish money, apply to my sister. I went to her, and she sent me to thee. I trust to her, I do not trust to them. She did not apply to you. Why did she not apply to me, when she wished help? Will you trust yourself to me? Go to him, if you have need (*besoin*) of any thing.

Vocabulary.

After, prep.	*après.*	By,	*par.*
At,	*à.*	For,	*pour.*
Behind,	*derrière.*	Near,	*près de.*
At the house of,			*chez.*
Before,	(speaking of time and order,)		*avant.*
Before,	(speaking of place and presence,)		*devant.*
By,	(by the side of,)		*à coté de.*

Exercise 72.

See § 47.

Follow your sister, but do not run after her. I wish to arrive (*arriver*) before her. I am near thee, but thou dost not see me. He will do it for thee to-morrow. This is for him. Do not go before me. I will walk (*marcher*) by my sister. Julia is at the house

of her brother. Mary is at my house, (at the house of me.) I shall go to your uncle's after to-morrow. I will not go with them. Have you applied to her? Was he speaking of me? He was speaking of thee. I will go with her. Without thee, I should not have found my book. Without me, your gloves would have been lost.

Exercise 73.

Do not go with him. They came to me. Return with me. We were running with her. This umbrella is not mine. It is your cousin's; return it to him. Come sit (inf.) by me. Lucy and her sisters are sewing, she sews better than they. Were you writing to her or to them? You and I (we) have not received our money. My cousin will write the letter for thee. I cannot see you; you are behind me. John will walk the first, and his brothers will follow him. Will you walk before me? Bring me the stick. Bring it to me. Carry it to him. Do not carry it to him.

Vocabulary.

On, before a noun, *sur*, prep.		On it,	*dessus*, adv.
Under, do. do. *sous*, prep.		Under it,	*dessous*, adv.

See § 47, and the Remark under it.

Exercise 74.

Does he put the stick under the table? He puts it under it. Does he put it on it or under it? He puts it on it. Send me the books. Send them to me. Send them to us. Let us send them to him. Let us send them to them. Send some there. Send me some. Give me the bread. Give me some. Give it to him. Give him some. Send him to us. Send her to us. Give back to us our ink. Give it back to me. Lead the horse to the river. Lead him there. Let us lead him there. Here are (*voici*) two horses. Lead them there. I cannot go there without her. You will be there before me.

SECT. V. REFLECTED PRONOUNS.

§ 56.—The reflected pronouns are placed before the verb, except where the verb is in the imperative mood used affirmatively. They are,

Myself, or to myself,	*me.*
Thyself, or to thyself,	*te.*
Himself, herself, itself, or To himself, to herself, to itself,	*se.*
Ourselves, or to ourselves,	*nous.*
Yourselves, or to yourselves,	*vous.*
Themselves, or to themselves,	*se.*

§ 57.—But when the verb is in the imperative mood used affirmatively, the reflected pronouns are placed *after* the verb, and

Thyself, or to thyself, is expressed by *toi.*

§ 58.—When the reflected pronouns are preceded by any other preposition than *to*, they are expressed as follows:

Myself,	is *moi* or *moi-même.*
Thyself,	" *toi* or *toi-même.*
Himself,	" *lui* or *lui-même.*
Herself,	" *elle* or *elle-même.*
Ourselves,	" *nous* or *nous-mêmes.*
Yourself,	" *vous* or *vous-même.*
Yourselves,	" *vous* or *vous-mêmes.*
Themselves, masc.,	" *eux* or *eux-mêmes.*
Themselves, fem.,	" *elles* or *elles-mêmes.*
One's self.	" *soi* or *soi-même.*

Examples.

§ 56.—He amuses himself,	*Il s'amuse.*
He recalls to himself the day,	*Il se rappelle le jour.*
§ 57.—Dress thyself,	*Habille-toi.*
§ 58.—For thyself,	*Pour toi.*
Of one's self,	*De soi.*

Vocabulary.

Apply, (to persons,)	*s'adresser.**	Find,	*trouver.* (3)
Apply, (to things,)	*s'appliquer.**	Finish,	*finir.* (4)
Blame, verb,	*blâmer.* (3)	Nail, (finger,)	*ongle,* m.
Burn, verb,	*brûler.* (3)	Repent,	*se repentir.* (34)
Cut, verb,	*couper.* (3)	Study, verb,	*étudier.* (3)
Dress, verb,	*habiller.* (3)	Too, too much,	*trop.*
Face,	*figure,* f.	Warm,	*chauffer.* (3)
Fault,	*faute,* f.	Wash,	*laver.* (3)

* See *Se Promener.*

Exercise 75.

I blame myself, and I repent of my fault. I will finish that work myself. I am not speaking of myself. We will speak of it to the master ourselves. Thou appliest thyself too closely (*trop*) to thy studies. I wish to see thee thyself. We will apply to our uncle when we need (*aurons besoin de*) help. The boys are going to the baker's themselves. Will they not warm themselves at the fire? They will warm themselves by walking (*en marchant*) fast. Do you find yourself better to-day? My sisters walk every day. He trusts too much to himself.

Remark.—Reflected verbs are used in French, in speaking of performing an action upon one's body or limbs; as,

I wash my hands, *Je* ME *lave les mains.*

Exercise 76.

I am warming myself. I am warming my feet. Henry is washing himself. He is washing his hands. We dress ourselves. The little child does not dress himself. He will burn his fingers. He is warming his hands. That child is burning his shoes. Is he not burning his feet? Mary is washing her muslin gown. Lucy is washing her face. Do you wash your hands and face? I have cut my finger. Thou hast cut thy arm. He has cut his hand We have cut our fingers. How have you broken your arm? The child is cutting his hair and his nails.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 59.—The relative pronoun *who* is translated into French thus:

Who,	*qui, lequel.*
Whose, of whom,	*dont, de qui, duquel.*
Whom, (object of a verb,)	*que.*
Whom, (governed by a preposition,)	*qui, lequel.*

§ 60.—*Who* is almost always translated by *qui*, which is used for both genders and both numbers; as,

The man who comes,	*L'homme* QUI *vient.*
The woman who comes,	*La femme* QUI *vient.*
The men who come,	*Les hommes* QUI *viennent.*

Remark.—*Lequel* is only used to avoid ambiguity. When the relative pronoun is separated from its antecedent by another noun, *who*, *whom*, *that* and *which* are translated by *lequel*, which is varied in the following manner, to agree with its antecedent in number and gender.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
masc.	*fem.*	*masc.*	*fem.*	
Lequel,	laquelle,	lesquels,	lesquelles,	*who, which.*

§ 61.—*Whose* / *Of whom* } are translated by
- *dont.* / *de qui.* } both genders and numbers.
- *duquel*, masc. sing.
- *de laquelle*, fem. sing.
- *desquels*, masc. plur.
- *desquelles*, fem. plur.

Examples.

A man WHOSE brother you know,	*Un homme* DONT *vous connaissez le frère.*
A woman WHOSE virtues are known,	*Une femme* DONT *les vertus sont connues.*
The boy OF WHOM I speak,	*Le garçon* DONT *je parle.*
The girl OF WHOM I speak,	*La fille* DONT *je parle.*

Remark 1.—*Whose,* when followed by a noun which is *not* governed by a preposition, is expressed by *dont;* and *dont* must be followed by the nominative of the next verb, whatever may be the construction of the sentence in English; as,

The man WHOSE genius is great,	*L'homme* DONT *le génie est grand.*
The man WHOSE talents we admire,	*L'homme* DONT *nous admirons les talents.*

Remark 2.—*Whose,* when followed by a noun which is governed by a preposition, is translated by *de qui* or *duquel,* &c.; not by *dont;* as,

A man on WHOSE friendship I can rely,	*Un homme sur l'amitié* DE QUI *je puis compter.*

Remark 3.—*Duquel, de laquelle,* &c., are employed to express *whose* and *of whom,* when the relative pronoun being separated from its antecedent by a number of words, the sentence might be rendered ambiguous by using *dont* and *de qui,* which being of either number and gender, do not indicate at once the noun to which they relate; as,

This is that young man's sister OF WHOM we were speaking,	*Voici la sœur de ce jeune homme* DE LAQUELLE *nous parlions.*

§ 62.—*Whom,*	the object of a verb, and employed without a preposition, is,	*que, lequel.*
Whom,	when preceded by any preposition except *of,* is,	*qui, lequel.*

Examples.

The man WHOM I saw,	*L'homme* QUE *j'ai vu.*
The man TO WHOM I spoke,	*L'homme à* QUI *j'ai parlé.*

§ 63.—The relative pronouns *which* and *that* are translated into French thus;

Which, when it is the *subject* or *nominative* of a verb, is translated by *That*, when it can be changed into *who* or *which*, and is the *subject* of a verb, is	*qui*.

Examples.

The wind which blows,	*Le vent* QUI *souffle.*
The child that cries,	*L'enfant* QUI *pleure.*
The fruits that ripen,	*Les fruits* QUI *mûrissent.*

§ 64.—*Of which*, { when placed after a noun that is *not* governed by a preposition, is expressed by } *dont.*

Of which, { when placed after a noun that is preceded by a preposition, is expressed by } *duquel*, masc. sing. / *de laquelle*, fem. sing / *desquels*, masc. plur. / *desquelles*, fem. plur.

Examples.

I have some foreign flowers, the smell of which is very agreeable.	*J'ai des fleurs étrangères,* DONT *l'odeur est très agréable.*
I have some foreign flowers, the smell of which I do not like.	*J'ai des fleurs étrangères,* DONT *je n'aime pas l'odeur.*
I have some foreign flowers, to the smell of which I shall never get accustomed.	*J'ai des fleurs étrangères, à l'odeur* DESQUELLES *je ne m'accoutumerai jamais.*

N. B. The pupil should carefully notice the construction of the preceding sentences.

In the first and second examples, *of which* being placed after a noun that is *not* governed by a preposition, is expressed by *dont;* and *dont* is placed immediately after its antecedent, (the noun to which it refers,) and is followed by the noun or pronoun, which is the nominative of the next verb.

In the third example, *of which*, being placed after a noun that is preceded by a preposition, is expressed by *desquelles*, and not by *dont.*

§ 65.—*Which*, when it is the object of a verb, is
That, { when it can be changed into *whom*, or *which*, and is the *object* of a verb, is } *que.*

Which, governed by a preposition, is { *lequel*, masc. sing. / *laquelle*, fem. sing. / *lesquels*, masc. plur. / *lesquelles*, fem. plur. }

Remark.—When the preposition that governs *lequel* is *de* or *à*, it is contracted with it, as follows:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
masc.	*fem.*	*masc.*	*fem.*	
Lequel,	laquelle,	lesquels,	lesquelles,	*who, which.*
duquel,	de laquelle,	desquels,	desquelles,	*of whom, of which.*
auquel,	à laquelle,	auxquels,	auxquelles,	*to whom, to which.*
duquel,	de laquelle,	desquels,	desquelles,	*from whom, from which.*

§ 66.—The pupil will perceive from the preceding lessons that we translate

who, *which*, *that*, } when nominative to the following verb, by *qui.*

whom, *which*, *that*, } when object of the following verb, by *que.*

Examples.

The man who	comes.	*L'homme qui*	*vient.*
The horse which		*Le cheval qui*	
The chaise that		*La chaise qui*	
The man whom	I see.	*L'homme que*	*je vois.*
The horse which		*Le cheval que*	
The coach that		*Le carrosse que*	

§ 67.—*What*, standing for *that which*, is { *ce qui.* or *ce que.* }

(1.) *Ce qui* is used when immediately followed by a verb of which *qui* is the subject nominative, as,

Always do *what* is right; i. e. *that which* is *right.*
Faites toujours CE QUI *est juste.*

(2.) *Ce que* is used when a nominative comes in between it and the next verb. *Que* is in the objective case.

What we say is true; i. e. *that which* we say is true.
CE QUE *nous disons est vrai.*

§ 68.—*What*, *Which*, { used in a vague sense, or referring to a phrase, and governed by a preposition, is } *quoi.*

Examples.

William learned his lessons; after which he went to walk.
Guillaume a appris ses leçons; après QUOI *il est allé se promener.*

§ 69.—*Of what* is *de ce qui*, *de ce que;* as,

I speak *of what* is true; i. e. *of that which*, &c.
Je parle DE CE QUI *est vrai.*
I speak *of what* you know.
Je parle DE CE QUE *vous savez.*

What of is *ce dont;* as,

What he speaks *of* is not true; *that of which*, &c.
CE DONT *il parle n'est pas vrai.*

§ 70.—*To what* is *à ce qui*, *à ce que;* as,

Apply to *what* is useful; i. e. *that which*, &c.
Appliquez-vous A CE QUI *est utile.*
Pay attention to what I say.
Faites attention A CE QUE *je dis.*

What to is *ce à quoi;* as,

What you apply *to* is not useful; i. e. *that to which*, &c.
CE A QUOI *vous vous appliquez n'est pas utile.*

Vocabulary.

Absolute,	*absolu.*	Strike,	*frapper.* (3)
Happen,	*arriver.* (3)	Study,	*étude*, f.
Lady,	*dame*, f.	Skip,	*bondir.* (4)
Letter,	*lettre*, f.	Sure,	*sûr.*
Meadow,	*prairie*, f.	Very, adv.	*très*, *fort*, *bien.*
Pick,	*cueillir.* (22)	Vice,	*vice*, m.
Power,	*pouvoir*, m.	Vex,	*fâcher.* (3)
Shun,	*éviter.* (3)	Wear,	*porter.* (3)

Exercise 77.

The man who sells apples is at the door. Call the woman who sells strawberries. The grass which grows. Do you see the lambs

that skip in the meadows? The boy that runs so (*si*) fast. The man whose apples you are picking. The king whom we fear. The lady whom you see is my sister. The house which we sold. The flowers which you are gathering are beautiful. Lewis has a horse which is worth two hundred dollars. The horse which you see in the meadow is not his. The jewels that you wear. The man with whom I came. The carriage in which I came.

§ 71.—The relative pronoun, *whom*, *which*, or *that*, is often omitted in English, but it must always be expressed in French when it is required by the meaning or construction of the sentence; as,

Where is the book you were reading?
Où est le livre QUE *vous lisiez?*

Exercise 78.

The king whose power is absolute. The physician to whose prudence I owe much, (*beaucoup.*) The niece of whom I speak. The birds of which you speak. The coach which is at the door. The house which we saw yesterday is for sale. (*Ex.* 54.) The man with whom Edward is walking. The carpenter to whom he gave the gold. The horse on which I returned to the city. I love what you love. Eat what I give you. Tell me what vexes you. The dog that is running. The boys who are picking cherries. The boys whom you will punish. The grapes you sell are not ripe. The lady from whom I received this letter.

Exercise 79.

The pencil with which I am writing. The pen with which thou art writing. There are (*voilà*) the books for which I gave eighty dollars. You are buying a book which is very dear. The book which you have bought is very dear. The book of which you speak is dear. He has lost all the money he had. The physician whom I see. The physician of whom I speak. The pine-apples of which Mary speaks. I have what pleases me. Edward does not sell what I sell. The table on which you write. This is that lawyer's niece of whom we were speaking. I love what you love.

§ 72.—When a relative pronoun, governed by a preposition, is not expressed in English, and the preposition that governs it, is placed at the end of the sentence, the relative pronoun must be expressed in French, preceded by the preposition; as,

Do you know the lady I am writing to?

This sentence should be translated thus:

Connaissez-vous la dame A QUI *j'écris?*
Do you know the lady to whom I am writing?

Exercise 80.

I do not know the shoemaker you speak of. We believe what he says. Do you know what vexes her? Here is (*voici*) the boy I was running after. What you speak of will happen. She is speaking of what will happen to-day. Tell me what I shall say. You whose sons are so attentive. The boys I see in the meadow. This is the stick with which he struck me. Where is the horse you have bought? The horse to which I have given some water. You speak of the lady whose aunt has been ill, (*malade.*)

He trusts to what he has done. What you trust to is not sure. The farmer whose garden you have seen. The queen whose jewels are lost. Shun vice and love what is good. Do not you believe what I say? The studies to which he applies, (*s'applique.*) The chair on which you are sitting, (*êtes assis.*) The pens with which Lucy writes. The coach in which I came. The apricots which you are picking. Give me the pen you are writing with. I do not know whom it belongs to. We speak of what we know. What we talk of every day.

CHAPTER IX.

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 73.—The interrogative pronoun *who* is translated into French thus:

Who,	*qui, quel.*
Whose,	*de qui, à qui.*
Whom,	*qui.*

(1.) *Who* is translated by *qui*, when it does not refer to a noun coming after the verb, of which *who* is the subject or nominative; as,

WHO wrote this letter?	QUI *a écrit cette lettre?*

(2.) *Who* is expressed by *quel, quelle, quels, quelles,* when the next verb is followed by a noun to which this pronoun *quel* refers; as,

WHO are these ladies?	QUELLES *sont ces dames?*

N.B. Remember *quel* must agree in number and gender with the noun to which it refers in the sentence. *Quel* is really an interrogative *adjective,* and the noun with which it agrees is understood, the sentence above reading thus, when the ellipsis is supplied: *Quelles (dames) sont ces dames?*

§ 74.—*Whose,* meaning of whom, is *de qui.*

Whose, { used before the verb *to be,* signifying possession, duty, or right, is } *à qui.*

Examples.

Whose pen have you?	*La plume* DE QUI *avez-vous?*
Whose pen is this?	A QUI *est cette plume?*

N.B. *Whose,* used interrogatively, is never expressed by *dont,* which is always a *relative* pronoun.

§ 75.—The interrogative pronoun *which* is thus translated:

Which	referring to a noun masc. sing. is	*quel, lequel.*
	" " fem. sing. is	*quelle, laquelle.*
	" " masc. plur. is	*quels, lesquels.*
	" " fem. plur. is	*quelles, lesquelles.*

Remark 1.—*Which*, coming immediately before the verb *to be*, and referring to a *noun* following that verb, is expressed by *quel*, &c.; as,

Which are the largest islands?	QUELLES *sont les plus grandes îles?*

Remark 2.—*Which*, coming immediately before the verb *to be*, when that verb is *not* followed by a noun, is translated by *lequel*, &c., as,

Look at those roses; which is the prettiest?	*Regardez ces roses-là;* LAQUELLE *est la plus jolie?*

Remark 3.—*Which*, meaning *which one*, *which ones*, and *not* followed by the verb *to be*, is translated by *lequel*, &c., as,

Those are my horses; which (one) do you admire the most?	*Voilà mes chevaux;* LEQUEL *admirez-vous le plus?*

Remark 4.—*Which*, followed by *of*, is translated by *lequel*, &c., as,

Which of these oranges will you have?	LAQUELLE *de ces oranges voulez-vous?*

Remark 5.—*Lequel* cannot be used as an adjective, and therefore must never be followed immediately by a noun. When it is preceded by the preposition *de* or *à*, contraction takes place as in the relative pronoun *lequel*, which is declined on page 85; as,

To which of my uncles have you written?	AUQUEL *de mes oncles avez-vous écrit?*

§ 76.—The interrogative pronoun *What* is translated by
1. *qu'est-ce qui.*
2. *que.* / *qu'est-ce que.*
3. *quoi.*
4. *quel, quelle,* &c.

(1.) *What,* signifying *what thing,* and employed as the nominative to a verb, is expressed by *qu'est-ce qui;* as,

What vexes you?	*Qu'est-ce qui vous fâche?*

(2.) *What,* signifying *what thing,* and used without a preposition as the *object* of a verb, is expressed by *que* or *qu'est-ce que;* as,

What are you doing?	*Que faites-vous?* or *Qu'est-ce que vous faites?*

(2.) *What,* when it means *what sort of thing,* or *of what consequence,* and is followed by the verb *to be,* is likewise expressed by *que* or *qu'est-ce que;* as,

What are men before God?	*Que sont les hommes devant Dieu?*
What is light?	*Qu'est-ce que la lumière?*

(3.) *What,* signifying *what thing,* and preceded by a preposition, whether expressed or understood, is translated by *quoi;* as,

Of what is he speaking?	*De quoi parle-t-il?*

(3.) *What,* used as an interjection, is *quoi;* as,

What! is that my brother?	*Quoi! est-ce là mon frère?*

(4.) *What,* when it does not mean *what thing,* and relates to a noun placed after the verb which follows *what,* is translated by *quel, quelle, quels, quelles,* according to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates; as,

What are your motives?	*Quels sont vos motifs?*

Vocabulary.

America,	*Amérique*, f.	Motive,	*motif*, m.
Asia,	*Asie*, f.	Name,	*nom*, m.
Africa,	*Afrique*, f.	Name, verb,	*nommer*. (3)
City,	*ville*, f.	Republic,	*république*, f.
Continent,	*continent*, m.	Ride, verb,	*monter*. (3)
Europe,	*Europe*, f.	River,	*rivière*, f.
Form, verb,	*former*. (3)	State,	*état*, m.
Island,	*île*, f.	Study, verb,	*étudier*. (3)
Look at,	*regarder*. (3)	Sun,	*soleil*, m.

Northern, *septentrional*, or *du nord*.
Southern, *méridional*, or *du sud*.
Eastern, *oriental*.
Western, *occidental*.

Exercise 81.

Who wishes to pick strawberries? Who will go with me? Who are those children we see in the meadow? Whose horses have you bought? Whose gloves are these? Whose son are you? Whom have you seen to day? Of whom were you speaking to my mother? With whom will you go this evening to the city? You have seen my horses; which do you prefer? Which is the best? Which is the best translation? Whose house is that? I do not know whose it is. What are you doing there? (*là*) What makes you laugh? What do you wish to say? Of what were you talking? What is a continent?

Exercise 82.

Look at those two houses, and tell me which you prefer. Can you not tell me which is the prettiest? Whose fan is this? Who has done that? What! is it (*est-ce*) you? What are Edward's motives? Which are the largest rivers? Which of these books were you reading? Of what is John guilty? To which of the boys shall I give the watch? Who gave thee this beautiful dog? For what dost thou call me? Who is calling me? Which of these horses shall I ride? Which horse shall I ride? What is an island? What is the name of that river?

Exercise 83.

Which are the northern states? There are two oranges whose are they? Which do you prefer? Which is the largest? What! is he not willing to speak to Lewis? Which of these roses do you wish? Whose boots have you? Whose are these copy-books? Whose daughter is she? What is a republic? To which of thy sisters shall I send some snow-drops? In which of those houses does thy aunt live? Which is the largest? Which has the largest garden? About (*de*) what are the boys talking? What! is she not here? Will you have oranges or pine-apples? I prefer the latter to the former.

Exercise 84.

Which is the eastern continent? In what city do you live? What is the sun? The stars are suns. Give these handkerchiefs to those girls. These flowers are prettier than those. I have bought a cow and a horse; the former costs (*coûte*) me five and twenty dollars, the latter eighty-five. What! you have given too much. What is the name of that star? What is Mary looking at? Whose apron has she? This lesson is shorter than that. What are kings and queens? On what island? What continent do Europe, Asia, and Africa form? Eat this pear, and take to your sister the ones that you have in your apron. What is honor?

Exercise 85.

What lesson are you studying? Which is the largest of the western states? Which is the smallest of the northern states? He only (*seul*) knows my motives. The physician to whom you are writing is not at home. Let us send her some lilies. Let us send them to them. I! pick (*cueillir*) your flowers! Who has done that? It was not I; it was she. Bring me a copy-book. Do not bring it to me. He and I (we) were together. I will go with thee. This stick is mine, and this umbrella is hers. This peach is not Mary's; she has eaten hers. Do not put the apples on the table; put them under it. Have you seen him? I have not spoken to him. Where is the pine-apple I gave to the boys? They have given it to their mother. I prefer these cherries to those.

CHAPTER X.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

SECT. I. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS WHICH ARE NEVER JOINED TO A NOUN.

§ 77.—Every one, each one, *chacun.*
Nobody, no one, none, any body, *personne.*
Other people, others, *autrui.*
One, somebody, we, you, they, people, &c. *on.*
Somebody, some one, any one, *quelqu'un*, masc. sing.
Some, / Any, { meaning *a few*, not followed by a noun, but standing for a noun of the masculine gender, } *quelques-uns*, masc. plur.
Some, / Any, { do. do. standing for a noun of the fem. gender. } *quelques-unes*, fem. plur.
Whoever, whosoever, any person that, *quiconque.*
One another, each other, *l'un l'autre.*

Chacun, referring to a noun of the feminine gender, is *chacune;* it has no plural.

Personne, when a pronoun, is always masc. and singular. When *personne* means *nobody, no one, none,* NE must be placed before the verb; as,

Nobody believes it, *Personne* NE *le croit.*

Autrui has neither gender nor number; it is always preceded by a preposition.

Quiconque is invariable, and the verb of which it is the subject is in the singular number.

L'un l'autre is declined in the following manner, viz:—

SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.
L'un l'autre,	l'une l'autre, *one another.*
L'un de l'autre,	l'une de l'autre, *of one another.*
L'un à l'autre,	l'une à l'autre, *to one another.*

PLURAL.

Masc.	Fem.
Les uns les autres,	les unes les autres, *one another.*
Les uns des autres,	les unes des autres, *of one another.*
Les uns aux autres,	les unes aux autres, *to one another.*

N. B. The pupil must remember that the preposition which comes before *one another* in English, is placed *between* the two words *l'un, l'autre,* in French.

Remarks on the Indefinite Pronoun ON.

1.—*On* is always the nominative of a verb, and, though it represents *we, they, people,* which are plural, it requires the verb to be in the third person singular; as,

On dit, They say, people say.

2.—The following and other similar indefinite expressions are also translated into French by *on* with the verb in the active voice:

It will be said, *On dira.*
It has been thought, *On a cru.*

3.—English *passive* verbs used *indefinitely* require the *active* voice in French, with *on* for the nominative; and the nominative of the verb in English becomes its object in French; as,

I have been told that he is gone, *On m'a dit qu'il est parti.*
Rewards will be given to-morrow, *On donnera des récompenses demain.*

Exercise 86.

People believe it. Do not they believe it? Do not they say so (*le*)? It will soon (*bientôt*) be known, if that is true. It was told to my sister yesterday. Have the men been called from the meadow? Do not speak ill of one another. Whoever says so, says what is

not true. Each one of the knives. Each one of the forks. No one knows it. The works of others. Is there any one at the door? There is nobody. Take some of these apples. Somebody has taken my book. Is no one willing to come with me? Have all the playthings been found? Some of the apricots are not ripe.

Exercise 87.

Send me some of those copy-books to-morrow. All the apples have been eaten. Each of these books has its value. Put them each in (*à*) its place. My brother will do it better than anybody. Is it known who wrote that book? Do not do to others what you would not wish (them to do to you,) (*que l'on vous fit.*) The boys are talking to one another. It is said that the king is dead. Have the cherries been picked? Each star. Each one of the stars. Which is the largest of the western states? What lesson are you studying?

Vocabulary.

Ask for,	*demander.* (3)	Every body,	*tout le monde.*
Any thing,	*rien.*	Expect,	*attendre.* (7)
Nothing,	*ne . . . rien.*	Like, verb,	*aimer.* (3)
Call, (at a house,)	*passer.* (3)	Still, yet,	*encore.*
Engraving,	*gravure,* f.	Whether,	*si.*

Exercise 88.

I can give you nothing. Do you know whether your uncle's horses have been sold? They have not been sold yet. Have you still any of those engravings which you showed me the other day? I have a few of them, that I will sell you cheap (*bon marché.*) I expect somebody. Has anybody called here to-day? I have been told that your aunt is sick. Some lessons are too long. Some of the lessons are short. Give me some of those caps. What are they looking at? How did he burn his hand? What does the poor woman expect? This cap is not so pretty as the one that I have made.

SECT. II. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS SOMETIMES JOINED TO NOUNS, AND SOMETIMES NOT.

§ 78.—All, every, every thing, *tout*, masc. sing.

Both,	*l'un et l'autre.*
Both,*	*tous les deux*, m.
Both,	*toutes les deux*, f.
Either,	*l'un ou l'autre.*
Neither,	*ni l'un ni l'autre.*
Other,	*autre.*
No, none, not one,	*nul*, masc., *nulle*, fem.
Not any, none, not one,	*aucun*, m. *aucune*, f.
No, not one,	*pas un*, m. *pas une*, f.
Same,	*même.*
Several, many,	*plusieurs*, masc. and f.
Such,	*tel*, masc. *telle*, fem.

These words, when joined to a noun, are adjectives; when used without a noun, they are pronouns.

Ni l'un ni l'autre, nul, aucun, and *pas un,* require *ne* before the verb with which they are connected.

L'un et l'autre is declined thus:

SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.
l'un et l'autre,	l'une et l'autre, *both.*
de l'un et de l'autre,	de l'une et de l'autre, *of both.*
à l'un et à l'autre,	à l'une et à l'autre, *to both.*

PLURAL.

Masc.	Fem.
les uns et les autres,	les unes et les autres, *both.*
des uns et des autres,	des unes et des autres, *of both.*
aux uns et aux autres,	aux unes et aux autres, *to both.*

N. B. The pupil will notice the repetition of the *preposition* in the *French* pronoun.

* *Remark.—Both* is translated by *tous deux,* masc., and *toutes deux,* fem., when it means *two together,* or *at the same time.*

L'un ou l'autre is declined thus:

SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.
l'un ou l'autre,	l'une ou l'autre, *either.*
de l'un ou de l'autre,	de l'une ou de l'autre, *of either*
à l'un ou à l'autre,	à l'une ou à l'autre, *to either.*

PLURAL.

Masc	Fem.
les uns ou les autres,	les unes ou les autres, *either.*
des uns ou des autres,	des unes ou des autres, *of either.*
aux uns ou aux autres,	aux unes ou aux autres, *to either.*

Ni l'un ni l'autre is declined thus:

SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.
ni l'un ni l'autre,	ni l'une ni l'autre, *neither.*
ni de l'un ni de l'autre,	ni de l'une ni de l'autre, *of neither*
ni à l'un ni à l'autre,	ni à l'une ni à l'autre, *to neither.*

PLURAL.

Masc.	Fem.
ni les uns ni les autres,	ni les unes ni les autres, *neither.*
ni des uns ni des autres,	ni des unes ni des autres, *of neither.*
ni aux uns ni aux autres,	ni aux unes ni aux autres, *to neither.*

Exercise 89.

Every thing is not lost. None of your sisters will come. We shall not see any of them to-day. The other farmers. The money of the others. Each man. Each of the men. Take either of these oranges. I wish neither of them. None of the books which you have pleases me. Of all these apples, not one is yet ripe. Nobody speaks to me of it. I am not speaking to any body. Where are John and Stephen? Lewis receives money from both. I have written to both, but neither has answered my letters. Several have spoken to me of it. Those physicians speak well of one another. The lawyer to whom you are writing is not at home.

Exercise 90.

Do not look at each other's copy-books. Somebody has been (*venu*) here to-day, who wished to speak to you. Nobody likes that carpet. Take some of these snow-drops. Give me a few of them. Mary and Lucy are both in the garden. We love them both. Where is our little dog? He cannot be found. Has anybody asked to see

me? Everybody knows it. You will be expected at your uncle's. Not one of you has yet given me her exercise. We see nothing. You may have either of those pens. Which is the smallest of the northern states? You have not done anything to-day.

Vocabulary.

Busy,	*occupé*	Praise, verb,	*louer.* (3)
Fall, verb,	*tomber.* (3)	Property,	*bien,* m.
Evening,	*soir,* m.	Only, alone, adj.	*seul.*
Morning,	*matin,* m.	Week,	*semaine,* f.

Exercise 91.

Show me your books, and I will see whether I have read any of them. What shall I buy? Which season do you prefer? What is a city? Have you seen the bookseller Edward was speaking of? Which one? The one whose daughter you know very well; but whose name I do not know. Lucy is not at home, she is at her sister's. Send her the letter you are reading. What is the carpenter saying? He says he will not be able to do what you wish this week. The children were running after one another, and both fell.

Exercise 92.

Which cloak shall I bring you? The cloth one or the silk one? Will you wear your new hat or your old one? The oak of (*avec*) which that chair is made, is very beautiful. Sit by me; I cannot hear what you say. Whose letter is this? Lend me your penknife. Which one? Is this one yours? Name the western states. No other man. Do not take the property of others. He says nothing. Do you know whether the letters have been received, that were expected this morning? They have not been received yet. He only knows my motives.

Exercise 93.

People are looking at you. Does any one of you wish to go with me to the city? In which continent is Africa? Take some flowers to each of thy sisters. We shall often write letters to one another. My uncle is in Europe. (See § 7.) Our parents will go to America on the second of June, and they will return to Europe on the 22d of December. Whoever knows Mary, loves her. Somebody knocks at the door. Every one says so, (*le.*) Each one of these books.

SECT. III. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS ALWAYS FOLLOWED BY QUE

§ 79.—Whoever, whosoever,		*qui que ce soit qui.* *qui que ce fût qui.*
Whoever,	before the verb *to be*,	*qui que.*
Whomever, whomsoever,		*qui que ce soit que.* *qui que ce fût que.*
Whatever,		*quoi que.*
Whoever, Whatever,	when placed before the verb *to be*, and relating to a noun that follows it,	*quel que*, masc. sing. *quelle que*, fem. sing. *quels que*, masc. plur. *quelles que*, fem. plur.
Whatever,	when followed by a noun, placed before *que*,	*quelque . . . que*, sing. *quelques . . . que*, plur.
However,	when immediately followed by an adjective or an adverb	*quelque . . . que.* *tout . . . que.*

All the above pronouns except *tout . . . que* require the verb which follows them to be in the subjunctive mood.

Examples.

Whoever may speak to me.
Qui que ce soit qui me parle.
Whoever would speak of it.
Qui que ce fût qui en parlât.
Whoever you may be.
Qui que vous soyez.
Whomsoever I may receive.
Qui que ce soit que je reçoive.
Whatever you may say.
Quoi que vous disiez.
Whoever these men may be.
Quels que soient ces hommes.
Whatever talents he may have.
Quelques talents qu'il ait.
However great they may be.
Quelque grands qu'ils soient, or
Tout grands qu'ils sont.

Exercise 94.

Whoever may laugh. Whatever Lucy may send. Whomsoever I may see. Whoever these boys may be. Whatever friends they may have. However pretty she may be. Whoever would beat the dog. However large he may be. Whoever those women may be. Whomsoever you may know. Whatever lessons they may have. Whatever you may do. However rich his father may be. Whatever he may say, I will not believe him. Both shall go with me. Neither is in the garden. Shall I call your mother or aunt? Call either. For what is she coming? They alone do what I wish. What is the mind?

Exercise 95.

Whoever is guilty shall be punished. Have you nothing to say to me? In which continent is North America? Of whom is Lucy speaking? What is she giving to the old woman? With what are you writing? He is praised, he is blamed, he is punished, but whatever they do, he is always lazy. Whatever advantages my sister may have had. However faithful their friends may have been. Whatever may be the evils of this life. Whoever asks for me, tell him that I am busy. He applies himself to nothing whatever. What is beauty? A flower, that soon fades (*se fâne.*)

PARTICIPLES.

Remark.—The most important rules for the French Participle are so necessary even to the beginner in translating from English into French, that it is thought best to insert them, even in this elementary work. There are other rules for the participles, in addition to the ones here given, which the pupil will find in any French grammar.

§ 80.—*Rule* 1st. The Past Participle, when not preceded by an auxiliary verb, agrees in gender and number with the noun or pronoun to which it refers; as, The letter written by her, *La lettre écrite par elle.*

Rule 2d. The Past Participle, when preceded by the auxiliary verb *to be*, agrees in gender and number with the noun or pronoun which is the nominative of the verb; as, They are followed, *Ils sont suivis.*

Rule 3d. The Past Participle, when preceded by the auxiliary verb *to have*, agrees in gender and number with the *direct* object of the verb, when, and *only* when, the said object is, in the French sentence, placed before the verb; as, The letters which I have written, *Les lettres que j'ai écrites.*

Rule 4th. The Past Participles of reflected verbs, which are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *to be*, follow Rule 3d; as, They have repented, *Ils se sont repentis.*

Vocabulary.

Build,	*bâtir.* (4)	Mistake,	*faute*, f.
Complain,	*se plaindre.* (19)	Show, verb,	*montrer.* (3)
Defend,	*défendre.* (7)	Subject, noun,	*sujet*, m.
Employ,	*occuper.* (3)	Thank,	*remercier.* (3)
Indulgent,	*indulgent.*	Window,	*fenêtre*, f.

Here is, here are, *voici.*
There is, there are, *voilà.*

N.B. *Voici, here is,—here are,—behold,* and *voilà, there is,—there are,—behold,* are used in pointing out objects.

Exercise 96.

A letter well written. A horse beaten by a man. The translation is well written. Those houses are very well built. My brother has written a letter. My sister has written a letter. My brothers have written a letter. There is the letter he has written. Do you wish to see the letter she has written? You can see the letter they have written. Her brother was punished. The boys will be punished. My sister is come at last, (*enfin.*) She had employed herself. The boys have shown themselves very courageous. The men have defended themselves.

Exercise 97.

He has seen us. These letters are well written. My brother has made a mistake. Here is the mistake he has made. My sister has made a mistake. Here is the mistake she has made. Where is the letter I have given him? I have eaten a peach. The peach that you have eaten, and the strawberries that I have eaten. Has she given you any money? Has your mother sold her house? Which house has she sold? What gowns has she bought? She is loved by (*de*) her subjects. Mary has repented of her fault. The girls found (*comp. pres.*) themselves sick.

Exercise 98.

The lesson which John has studied ten times. The lessons that William has studied. The lesson that my sisters have studied. Your father has shown himself very indulgent. My sisters have found themselves very happy. She has applied herself to her lessons. The little boys had employed themselves. Have you any of those oranges that you showed (*comp. pres.*) me the other day? I have lost my watch. I have not found it. I have found a watch. It is not the one which I have lost. I have sent thee a letter. I have not received it.

Exercise 99.

My daughter has employed herself all the day, (*journée*, f.) The boys have dressed themselves. Has John thanked my sisters? He has thanked them. He has thanked her. She has thanked him. Edward has warmed himself. Lucy has washed herself. Let us dress ourselves. The children have warmed themselves. Have the

girls warmed themselves? Apply thyself to thy studies. Apply to your friends. This is good, but that is much better. My mother found herself (*comp. pres.*) better.

Exercise 100.

Has she washed her hands? She has washed them.

Remark.—The pupil must bear in mind that in such sentences as the preceding, the reflected pronoun is the *indirect* object, and the noun or pronoun denoting the part of the body spoken of, is the *direct* object. The sentences given above are translated into French thus:

S'est-elle lavé les mains?
Literally, Has she washed the hands to herself?
Elle se les est lavées.
Literally, She has washed them to herself.

The Past Participle follows Rule 3d.

William has warmed his feet. Did he burn them? Lucy has warmed her feet. Did she not burn her hand? She has burned her fingers. You will burn your hair, if you sit so near the lamp. She has washed her face. He has washed his face. How many (*combien de*) gold pens have you? I have three. Each one of these pens is bad. Every body is busy. All the water has been drunk. There is no truth in that history. The histories that I have read. Have I returned to you all the books you have lent me?

Exercise 101.

N.B. See page 81, and the verbs *Y Avoir* and *Falloir* in the Appendix.

I must sleep. Thou must read. He must walk. You must follow your sister. Mary must study her lesson. William must read the book twice. It will be necessary for us to give some money to the poor woman. I have given her some bread and beef. The queen must sell her jewels. There is her palace. There is a bird on that tree. There is no coffee. Is there any tea? We must punish the wicked boys. John must drink water. Is there any milk on the table? Here is some milk.

Exercise 102.

N.B. See the Remarks on *Devoir*, pages 140 and 145.

I owe three dollars to the baker. I am to call at his house this evening. We should pay promptly (*promptement*) what we owe. You ought to have paid him yesterday. It has been necessary to sell the horses and carriage. Children must sleep eight hours. Thou must write thy letter. Edward has dressed himself quickly. He must take his sister to school. The lamp which you have lighted. William must return to France (§ 7) to-morrow. Thou must employ thyself all the morning. (*matinée*, f.)

Exercise 103.

N.B. See the Remarks on *To Be*, page 145.

How is thy mother? She is very well to-day. How old is that child? He is six years old. He will be seven the first of next month. He is sleepy and hungry. Each flower, each tree, has a lesson written on its leaves. I like this, but I do not like that. Why do you warm your hands? There is what you wish. There are several boys in the garden. Here are some raspberries. Mary must wash her gloves. Is there no sugar in the house? Are there no strawberries in the dish? Do not eat too many apples. I have eaten two. Those that I eat (*comp. pres.*) were ripe. Do you take tea or coffee? I take neither. Shall I give you plums or peaches? You may give me both. Are you afraid of this horse or of that one?

Vocabulary.

Dictionary,	*dictionnaire*, m.	Pay,	*payer*. (3)
England,	*Angleterre*, f.	Play,	*jouer*. (3)
France,	*France*, f.	Prevent,	*prévenir*. (61)
Help, verb,	*aider*. (3)	Rarely,	*rarement*.

Exercise 104.

N.B. See the Remarks on *Would, Might, Could*, &c., on pages 140 and 141.

I would call at the bookseller's, if I could; but I am to be at the physician's at eleven o'clock.(hours) I will lend you my dictionary, that you may write your exercise this evening. You might do it in

half an hour. (*une demi-heure*) If I could have done it, I would not have asked (*prié*) you to help me. You might have done it as well as I. I could not have done it so (*si*) soon. Mary is to come here soon. We are to go to my aunt's to-morrow. Was not Lucy to pay two dollars? She ought not to have bought that handkerchief. She owes nothing. She is not to pay anything.

Exercise 105.

We must not be lazy. I must see that man. Thou must not go alone. He must come himself. Your brother must go with you. Stephen owed the bookseller five dollars, and he was to receive the value in books. Are thy sisters gone? How are they? Do they wish me to write to them? William would do it, I know, if you would tell him that it is for me. What will you have? May we study our lessons now, and play this evening? It is very fine weather. Is it not too cold? It is cold, but it is not too cold. Is not the child cold? He is hungry, but he is not cold.

Remark.—Adverbs are generally placed, in French, immediately *after* the verb. When the verb is used in a compound tense, the adverb is placed *between* the auxiliary and the participle; as,

They write their letters badly, *Ils écrivent* MAL *leurs lettres.*
They have written badly, *Ils ont* MAL *écrit.*

Exercise 106.

Mary writes her exercises well. Do we not always say the truth? We often call at my cousin's. I never drink wine. Have we not dressed ourselves quickly? My niece has blamed herself too much. Were we to pay a dollar? I will not receive a cent from you. I often see your brother. He would eat the pine-apple; I could not prevent him. May I read with you the history of England and that of France? He rarely goes to your uncle's. Would he have gone home without me? How is the weather? It is warm, and it will be warmer to-morrow. Are you not warm? I am warm and thirsty.

N.B. At the end of the Appendix will be found a few pages of English, which the pupil will be able to translate into French easily, with the help of a French dictionary.

APPENDIX.

CONJUGATION OF FRENCH VERBS.

There are four conjugations or classes of verbs.

Verbs of the *first* conjugation have the infinitive mood, present tense, ending in ER.

Verbs of the *second* conjugation have the infinitive mood, present tense, ending in IR.

Verbs of the *third* conjugation have the infinitive mood, present tense, ending in OIR.

Verbs of the *fourth* conjugation have the infinitive mood present tense, ending in RE.

The *primitive* tenses of verbs are those from which the others are formed; they are five in number, and are,

The present of the infinitive mood,
The present participle,
The past participle,
The present of the indicative mood,
And *the preterite of the indicative mood*

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
PRESENT.		PAST.	
Avoir,	*to have.*	Avoir eu,	*to have had.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		COMPOUND.	
Ayant,	*having.*	Ayant eu,	*having had.*
PAST.			
Eu, *m.* eue, *f.*	*had.*		

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		PRETERIT INDEFINITE, *or* COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.	
J'ai,	*I have.*	J'ai eu,	*I have had.*
Tu as,	*thou hast.*	Tu as eu,	*thou hast had.*
Il a,	*he has.*	Il a eu,	*he has had.*
Elle a,	*she has.*	Elle a eu,	*she has had.*
Nous avons,	*we have.*	Nous avons eu,	*we have had.*
Vous avez,	*you have.*	Vous avez eu,	*you have had.*
Ils ont,	*they* m. *have.*	Ils ont eu,	*they have had.*
Elles ont,	*they* f. *have.*	Elles ont eu,	*they have had.*

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT, *or* COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.	
J'avais,	*I had.*	J'avais eu,	*I had had.*
Tu avais,	*thou hadst.*	Tu avais eu,	*thou hadst had.*
Il *or* elle avait,	*he* or *she had.*	Il *or* elle avait eu,	*he* or *she had had.*
Nous avions,	*we had.*	Nous avions eu	*we had had.*
Vous aviez,	*you had.*	Vous aviez eu,	*you had had.*
Ils *or* elles avaient,	*they had.*	Ils *or* elles avaient eu,	*they had had.*

PRETERIT DEFINITE.		PRETERIT ANTERIOR, *or* COMPOUND OF THE PRETERIT.	
J'eus,	*I had.*	J'eus eu,	*I had had.*
Tu eus,	*thou hadst.*	Tu eus eu,	*thou hadst had.*
Il *or* elle eut,	*he had.*	Il *or* elle eut eu,	*he* or *she had had.*
Nous eûmes,	*we had.*	Nous eûmes eu,	*we had had.*
Vous eûtes,	*you had.*	Vous eûtes eu,	*you had had.*
Ils *or* elles eurent,	*they had.*	Ils *or* elles eurent eu,	*they had had.*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.		COMPOUND OF THE FUTURE, *or* FUTURE ANTERIOR.	
J'aurai,	*I shall have.*	J'aurai eu,	*I shall have had.*
Tu auras,	*thou wilt have.*	Tu auras eu,	*thou wilt have had.*
Il *or* elle aura,	*he* or *she will have.*	Il *or* elle aura eu,	*he* or *she will have had.*
Nous aurons,	*we shall have.*	Nous aurons eu,	*we shall have had.*
Vouz aurez,	*you will have.*	Vous aurez eu,	*you will have had.*
Ils *or* elles auront,	*they will have.*	Ils *or* elles auront eu,	*they will have had.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.		PAST, *or* COMPOUND OF THE CONDITIONAL.	
J'aurais,	*I should have.*	J'aurais eu,	*I should have had.*
Tu aurais,	*thou shouldst have.*	Tu aurais eu,	*thou shouldst have had.*
Il *or* elle aurait,	*he* or *she should have.*	Il *or* elle aurait eu,	*he* or *she should have had.*
Nous aurions,	*we should have.*	Nous aurions eu,	*we should have had.*
Vous auriez,	*you should have.*	Vous auriez eu,	*you should have had.*
Ils *or* elles auraient,	*they should have.*	Ils *or* elles auraient eu,	*they should have had.*

IMPERATIVE.

Aie,	*Have* (*thou.*)
Ayons,	*let us have.*
Ayez,	*have* (*ye* or *you.*)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.		PRETERIT, *or* COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT	
Que j'aie,	*That I may have.*	Que j'aie eu,	*That I may have had.*
Que tu aies,	*that thou mayst have.*	Que tu aies eu,	*that thou mayst have had.*
Qu'il *or* qu'elle ait,	*that he may have.*	Qu'il *or* qu'elle ait eu,	*that he* or *she may have had.*
Que nous ayons,	*that we may have.*	Que nous ayons eu,	*that we may have had.*
Que vous ayez,	*that you may have.*	Que vous ayez eu,	*that you may have had.*
Qu'ils *or* qu' elles aient,	*that they ma have.*	Qu'ils *or* qu'elles aient eu,	*that they may have had.*

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT, *or* COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.	
Que j'eusse,	*That I might have.*	Que j'eusse eu,	*That I might have had.*
Que tu eusses,	*that thou mightst have.*	Que tu eusses eu,	*that thou mightst have had.*
Qu'il *or* qu'elle eût,	*that he* or *she might have.*	Qu'il *or* qu'elle eût eu,	*that he* or *she might have had.*
Que nous eussions,	*that we might have.*	Que nous eussions eu,	*that we might have had.*
Que vous eussiez,	*that you might have.*	Que vous eussiez eu,	*that you might have had.*
Qu'ils *or* qu'elles eussent,	*that they might have.*	Qu'ils *or* qu'elles eussent eu,	*that they might have had.*

AVOIR, TO HAVE,
CONJUGATED NEGATIVELY.

N. B. The *first* persons only of the tenses are given; the pupil will learn the others from the preceding verb, which has been conjugated in full.

Infinitive Present,	N'avoir pas, or Ne pas avoir,	*not to have.*
Comp. Inf. Pres.,	N'avoir pas eu,	*not to have had.*
Present Participle,	N'ayant pas,	*not having.*
Comp. Pres. Part.,	N'ayant pas eu,	*not having had.*
Indicative Present,	Je n'ai pas,	*I have not.*
Comp. Indic. Pres.,	Je n'ai pas eu,	*I have not had.*
Indic. Imperfect,	Je n'avais pas,	*I had not.*
Comp. Indic. Imp.,	Je n'avais pas eu,	*I had not had.*
Indic. Preterite,	Je n'eus pas,	*I had not.*
Comp. Indic. Pret.,	Je n'eus pas eu,	*I had not had.*
Indic. Future,	Je n'aurai pas,	*I shall not have.*
Comp. Indic. Fut.,	Je n'aurai pas eu,	*I shall not have had.*
Conditional Pres.,	Je n'aurais pas,	*I should not have.*
" *Past,*	Je n'aurais pas eu,	*I should not have had.*
Imperative,	N'aie pas, N'ayons pas, N'ayez pas,	*do thou not have.* *let us not have.* *have not (you.)*
Subjunctive Present,	Que je n'aie pas,	*That I may not have.*
Comp. Subj. Pres.,	Que je n'aie pas eu,	*That I may not have had.*
Subjunctive Imperfect,	Que je n'eusse pas,	*That I might not have.*
Comp. Subj. Imp.,	Que je n'eusse pas eu,	*That I might not have had.*

AVOIR, TO HAVE,
CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY.

N. B. As a question can not be asked in the *Infinitive*, *Imperative*, or *Subjunctive mood*, an interrogative verb does not possess those moods.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.	
Ai-je ?	*have I?*	Ai-je eu ?	*have I had?*
As-tu ?	*hast thou?*	As-tu eu ?	*hast thou had?*
A-t-il ?	*has he?*	A-t-il eu ?	*has he had?*
A-t-elle ?	*has she?*	A-t-elle eu ?	*has she had?*
Avons-nous ?	*have we?*	Avons-nous eu ?	*have we had?*
Avez-vous ?	*have you?*	Avez-vous eu ?	*have you had?*
Ont-ils ? Ont-elles ?	*have they?*	Ont-ils eu ? Ont-elles eu ?	*have they had?*

Imperfect,	Avais-je ?	*had I?*
Comp. Imp.,	Avais-je eu ?	*had I had?*
Preterit,	Eus-je ?	*had I?*
Comp. Pret.,	Eus-je eu ?	*had I had?*
Future,	Aurai-je ?	*shall I have?*
Comp. Future,	Aurai-je eu ?	*shall I have had?*
Conditional Pres.,	Aurais-je ?	*should I have?*
Cond. Past.,	Aurais-je eu ?	*should I have had?*

AVOIR,
CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

Present,	N'ai-je pas ?	*have I not?*
Comp. Present,	N'ai-je pas eu ?	*have I not had?*
Imperfect,	N'avais-je pas ?	*had I not?*
Comp. Imperf.	N'avais-je pas eu ?	*had I not had?*
Preterit,	N'eus-je pas ?	*had I not?*
Comp. Pret.,	N'eus-je pas eu ?	*had I not had?*
Future,	N'aurai-je pas ?	*shall I not have?*
Comp. Future,	N'aurai-je pas eu ?	*shall I not have had?*
Conditional Pres.,	N'aurais-je pas ?	*should I not have?*
Cond. Past.,	N'aurais-je pas eu ?	*should I not have had?*

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *ETRE*, TO BE.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES. PRESENT.		COMPOUND TENSES. PAST.	
Etre,	*to be.*	Avoir été,	*to have been*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		COMPOUND.	
Etant,	*being.*	Ayant été,	*having been.*
PAST. Eté,	*been.*		

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		PRETERITE INDEFINITE, *or* COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.	
Je suis,	*I am.*	J'ai été,	*I have been.*
Tu es,	*thou art.*	Tu as été,	*thou hast been.*
Il est,	*he is.*	Il a été,	*he has been.*
Nous sommes,	*we are.*	Nous avons été,	*we have been.*
Vous êtes,	*you are.*	Vous avez été,	*you have been.*
Ils sont,	*they are.*	Ils ont été,	*they have been.*

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT *or* COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.	
J'étais,	*I was.*	J'avais été,	*I had been.*
Tu étais,	*thou wast.*	Tu avais été,	*thou hadst been.*
Il était,	*he was.*	Il avait été,	*he had been.*
Nous étions,	*we were.*	Nous avions été,	*we had been.*
Vous étiez,	*you were.*	Vous aviez été,	*you had been.*
Ils étaient,	*they were.*	Ils avaient été,	*they had been.*

PRETERIT DEFINITE.		PRETERIT ANTERIOR, *or* COMPOUND OF THE PRETERIT.	
Je fus,	*I was.*	J'eus été,	*I had been.*
Tu fus,	*thou wast.*	Tu eus été,	*thou hadst been.*
Il fut,	*he was.*	Il eut été,	*he had been.*
Nous fûmes,	*we were.*	Nous eûmes été,	*we had been.*
Vous fûtes,	*you were.*	Vous eûtes été,	*you had been*
Ils furent,	*they were.*	Ils eurent été,	*they had been*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.		COMPOUND OF THE FUTURE, *or* FUTURE ANTERIOR.	
Je serai,	*I shall be.*	J'aurai été,	*I shall have been.*
Tu seras,	*thou wilt be.*	Tu auras été,	*thou wilt have been.*
Il sera,	*he will be.*	Il aura été,	*he will have been.*
Nous serons,	*we shall be.*	Nous aurons été,	*we shall have been.*
Vous serez,	*you will be.*	Vous aurez été,	*you will have been.*
Ils seront,	*they will be.*	Ils auront été,	*they will have been.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.		PAST, *or* COMPOUND OF THE CONDITIONAL.	
Je serais,	*I should be.*	J'aurais été,	*I should have been.*
Tu serais,	*thou shouldst be.*	Tu aurais été,	*thou shouldst have been.*
Il serait,	*he should be.*	Il aurait été,	*he should have been.*
Nous serions,	*we should be.*	Nous aurions été,	*we should have been.*
Vous seriez,	*you should be.*	Vous auriez été,	*you should have been.*
Ils seraient,	*they should be.*	Ils auraient été,	*they should have been.*

IMPERATIVE.

Sois,	*Be (thou).*
Soyons,	*Let us be.*
Soyez,	*Be (ye or you.)*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT *or* FUTURE.		PRETERIT, *or* COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.	
Que je sois,	*that I may be.*	Que j'aie été,	*that I may have been.*
Que tu sois,	*that thou mayst be.*	Que tu aies été,	*that thou mayst have been.*
Qu'il soit,	*that he may be.*	Qu'il ait été,	*that he may have been.*
Que nous soyons,	*that we may be.*	Que nous ayons été,	*that we may have been.*
Que vous soyez,	*that you may be.*	Que vous ayez été,	*that you may have been.*
Qu'ils soient,	*that they may be.*	Qu'ils aient été,	*that they may have been.*

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT, or COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.	
Que je fusse,	*that I might be.*	Que j'eusse été,	*that I might have been.*
Que tu fusses,	*that thou mightst be.*	Que tu eusses été,	*that thou mightst have been.*
Qu'il fût,	*that he might be.*	Qu'il eût été,	*that he might have been.*
Que nous fussions,	*that we might be.*	Que nous eussions été,	*that we might have been.*
Que vous fussiez,	*that you might be.*	Que vous eussiez été,	*that you might have been.*
Qu'ils fussent,	*that they might be.*	Qu'ils eussent été,	*that they might have been.*

ETRE, *TO BE,*
CONJUGATED NEGATIVELY.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Ne pas être,	*not to be.*	N'avoir pas été,	*not to have been.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		COMPOUND.	
N'étant pas,	*not being.*	N'ayant pas été,	*not having been.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		PRETERIT INDEFINITE.	
Je ne suis pas,	*I am not.*	Je n'ai pas été,	*I have not been.*
Tu n'es pas,	*thou art not.*	Tu n'as pas été,	*thou hast not been.*
Il n'est pas,	*he is not.*	Il n'a pas été,	*he has not been.*
Nous ne sommes pas,	*we are not.*	Nous n'avons pas été,	*we have not been.*
Vous n'êtes pas,	*you are not.*	Vous n'avez pas été,	*you have not been.*
Ils ne sont pas,	*they are not.*	Ils n'ont pas été,	*they have not been.*

Imperfect,	Je n'étais pas,	*I was not.*
Comp. Imp.,	Je n'avais pas été,	*I had not been.*
Preterit,	Je ne fus pas,	*I was not.*
Comp. Pret.,	Je n'eus pas été,	*I had not been.*
Future,	Je ne serai pas,	*I shall not be.*
Comp. Future,	Je n'aurai pas été,	*I shall not have been.*
Conditional Pres.,	Je ne serais pas,	*I should not be.*
Cond. Past,	Je n'aurais pas été,	*I should not have been.*

Imperative,	Ne sois pas,	*be thou not.*
	Ne soyons pas,	*let us not be.*
	Ne soyez pas,	*be ye not.*
Subjunctive Pres.,	Que je ne sois pas,	*that I may not be.*
Comp. Subj. Present,	Que je n'aie pas été,	*that I may not have been.*
Subjunctive Imperfect,	Que je ne fusse pas,	*that I might not be.*
Comp. Subj. Imp.,	Que je n'eusse pas été,	*that I might not have been.*

ETRE, *TO BE,*

CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.	
Suis-je ?	*am I?*	Ai-je été ?	*have I been ?*
Es-tu ?	*art thou ?*	As-tu été ?	*hast thou been ?*
Est-il ?	*is he ?*	A-t-il été ?	*has he been ?*
Est-elle ?	*is she ?*	A-t-elle été ?	*has she been ?*
Sommes-nous ?	*are we ?*	Avons-nous été ?	*have we been ?*
Etes-vous ?	*are you ?*	Avez-vous été ?	*have you been ?*
Sont-ils ? / Sont-elles ?	*are they ?*	Ont-ils été ? / Ont-elles été ?	*have they been?*
Imperfect,	Etais-je ?		*was I ?*
Comp. Imp.,	Avais-je été ?		*had I been ?*
Preterit,	Fus-je ?		*was I ?*
Comp. Pret.,	Eus-je été ?		*had I been ?*
Future,	Serai-je ?		*shall I be ?*
Comp. Future,	Aurai-je été ?		*shall I have been ?*
Conditional Pres.,	Serais-je ?		*should I be ?*
Cond. Past.,	Aurais-je été ?		*should I have been ?*

ETRE, *TO BE,*

CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

Present,	Ne suis-je pas ?	*am I not?*
Comp. Present,	N'ai-je pas été ?	*have I not been ?*
Imperfect,	N'étais-je pas ?	*was I not ?*
Comp. Imperf.	N'avais-je pas été,	*had I not been ?*
Preterit,	Ne fus-je pas ?	*was I not ?*
Comp. Pret.,	N'eus-je pas été ?	*had I not been?*
Future,	Ne serai-je pas ?	*shall I not be ?*
Comp. Future,	N'aurai-je pas été ?	*shall I not have been ?*
Conditional Pres.,	Ne serais-je pas ?	*should I not be*
Cond. Past.,	N'aurais-je pas été ?	*should I not have been ?*

N. B. Before learning the following Verbs, let the pupil study the remarks on the Comparison between the Tenses of English verbs and the Tenses of French Verbs, pages 135, 136, &c.

FIRST CONJUGATION IN ER.
PORTER.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES. PRESENT.		COMPOUND TENSES. PAST.	
Porter,	*to carry.*	Avoir porté,	*to have carried.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		COMPOUND.	
Portant,	*carrying.*	Ayant porté,	*having carried.*
PAST.			
Porté,	*carried.*		

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		PRETERIT INDEFINITE, or COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.	
Je porte,	*I carry.*	J'ai porté,	*I have carried.*
Tu portes,	*thou carriest.*	Tu as porté,	*thou hast carried.*
Il porte,	*he carries.*	Il a porté,	*he has carried.*
Nous portons,	*we carry.*	Nous avons porté,	*we have carried.*
Vouz portez,	*you carry.*	Vous avez porté,	*you have carried.*
Ils portent,	*they carry.*	Ils ont porté,	*they have carried.*

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT, or COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.	
Je portais,	*I was carrying.*	J'avais porté,	*I had carried.*
Tu portais,	*thou wast carrying.*	Tu avais porté,	*thou hadst carried.*
Il portait,	*he was carrying.*	Il avait porté,	*he had carried.*
Nous portions,	*we were carrying*	Nous avions porté,	*we had carried.*
Vous portiez,	*you were carrying.*	Vous aviez porté,	*you had carried.*
Ils portaient,	*they were carrying.*	Ils avaient porté,	*they had carried.*

PRETERIT DEFINITE.		PRETERIT ANTERIOR, or COMPOUND OF THE PRETERIT.	
Je portai,	*I carried.*	J'eus porté,	*I had carried.*
Tu portas,	*thou carriedst.*	Tu eus porté,	*thou hadst carried.*
Il porta,	*he carried*	Il eut porté,	*he had carried.*
Nous portâmes,	*we carried.*	Nous eûmes porté,	*we had carried.*
Vous portâtes,	*you carried.*	Vous eûtes porté,	*you had carried.*
Ils portèrent,	*they carried.*	Ils eurent porté,	*they had carried.*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.		COMPOUND OF THE FUTURE *or* FUTURE ANTERIOR.		
Je porterai,	*I shall carry.*	J'aurai porté,	*I shall*	*have carried.*
Tu porteras,	*thou wilt carry.*	Tu auras porté,	*thou wilt*	
Il portera,	*he will carry.*	Il aura porté,	*he will*	
Nous porterons,	*we shall carry.*	Nous aurons porté,	*we shall*	
Vous porterez,	*you will carry.*	Vous aurez porté,	*you will*	
Ils porteront,	*they will carry.*	Ils auront porté,	*they will*	

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.		PAST, *or* COMPOUND OF THE CONDITIONAL.		
Je porterais,	*I should carry.*	J'aurais porté,	*I should*	*have carried.*
Tu porterais,	*thou shouldst carry.*	Tu aurais porté,	*thou shouldst*	
Il porterait,	*he should carry.*	Il aurait porté,	*he should*	
Nous porterions,	*we should carry.*	Nous aurions porté,	*we should*	
Vous porteriez,	*you should carry.*	Vous auriez porté,	*you should*	
Ils porteraient,	*they should carry.*	Ils auraient porté,	*they should*	

IMPERATIVE.

Porte,	*carry (thou.)*
Portons,	*let us carry.*
Portez,	*carry (ye.)*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT *or* FUTURE.		PRETERIT, *or* COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.		
Que je porte,	*that I may carry.*	Que j'aie porté,	*that I may*	*have carried.*
Que tu portes,	*that thou mayst carry.*	Que tu aies porté,	*that thou mayst*	
Qu'il porte,	*that he may carry.*	Qu'il ait porté,	*that he may*	
Que nous portions,	*that we may carry.*	Que nous ayons porté,	*that we may*	
Que vous portiez,	*that you may carry.*	Que vous ayez porté,	*that you may*	
Qu'ils portent,	*that they may carry.*	Qu'ils aient porté,	*that they may*	

IMPERFECT.			PLUPERFECT, *or* COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.		
Que je portasse,	*that I*	*might carry.*	Que j'eusse porté,	*that I*	*might have carried.*
Que tu portasses,	*that thou*		Que tu eusses porté,	*that thou*	
Qu'il portât,	*that he*		Qu'il eût porté,	*that he*	
Que nous portassions,	*that we*		Que nous eussions porté,	*that we*	
Que vous portassiez,	*that you*		Que vous eussiez porté,	*that you*	
Qu'ils portassent,	*that they*		Qu'ils eussent porté,	*that they*	

REMARKS ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY OF SOME FRENCH VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. In verbs ending in *ger*, the *e* is retained before *a* and *o*, in order to preserve the soft sound of the *g*. See *manger*, verb 66 of the model verbs, *mangeant*, *mangeons*.

2. The verbs which end in *cer*, take a cedilla before *a* and *o*, in order to preserve the soft sound of the *c*. See *avancer*, verb 67, *avançant*, *avançons*.

3. Those verbs ending in *er* which have their final syllable preceded by *é*, (*e* close,) change this *é* into *è* (*e* open) before a mute syllable. See *céler*, verb 68, *cèle*, *cèlerai*.

4. Those verbs ending in *er* which have their final syllable preceded by *e*, (*e* mute,) as *lever*, *mener*, change this *e* mute into *è* (*e* open) before a mute syllable. See *mener*, verb 69, *mène*.

5. In verbs ending in *eler*, (the *e* before the *l* being unaccented, as *appeler*,) the *l* is doubled before a mute *e*. See *appeler*, verb 70, *appelle*.

6. In verbs ending in *eter*, (the *e* before the *t* being unaccented, as *jeter*,) the *t* is doubled before a mute *e*. See *jeter*, verb 71, *jette*. Except *acheter*.

7. Verbs ending in the present participle by *iant*, as *prier*, the present participle of which is *priant*, take double *i* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative, and present of the subjunctive; as, *nous priions*, *vous priiez*, *que nous priions*, *que vous priiez*.

8. Verbs ending in the present participle by *yant*, as *payer*, the present participle of which is *payant*, take *y* and *i* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative, and the present of the subjunctive; as, *nous payions*, *vous payiez*, *que nous payions*, *que vous payiez*.

Also, these verbs change *y* into *i* before *e* mute. See *essayer*, verb 72, *essaie*.

SECOND CONJUGATION IN IR.

FINIR.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		
	Finir,	*to finish.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Finissant,	*finishing.*	Fini,	*finished.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
Je finis,	*I finish.*	Je finissais,	*I was finishing.*
Tu finis,	*thou finishest.*	Tu finissais,	*thou wast finishing.*
Il finit,	*he finishes.*	Il finissait,	*he was finishing.*
Nous finissons,	*we finish.*	Nous finissions,	*we were finishing.*
Vous finissez,	*you finish.*	Vous finissiez,	*you were finishing.*
Ils finissent,	*they finish.*	Ils finissaient,	*they were finishing.*

PRETERIT.		FUTURE.	
Je finis,	*I finished.*	Je finirai,	*I shall finish.*
Tu finis,	*thou finishedst.*	Tu finiras,	*thou wilt finish.*
Il finit,	*he finished.*	Il finira,	*he will finish.*
Nous finîmes,	*we finished.*	Nous finirons,	*we shall finish.*
Vous finîtes	*you finished.*	Vous finirez,	*you will finish.*
Ils finirent,	*they finished.*	Ils finiront,	*they will finish.*

CONDITIONAL.		IMPERATIVE.	
Je finirais,	*I should finish.*		
Tu finirais,	*thou shouldst finish.*	Finis,	*finish (thou.)*
Il finirait,	*he should finish.*		
Nous finirions,	*we should finish.*	Finissons,	*let us finish.*
Vous finiriez,	*you should finish.*	Finissez,	*finish (ye.)*
Ils finiraient,	*they should finish.*		

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.			IMPERFECT.		
Que je finisse,	*that I may*	*finish.*	Que je finisse,	*that I*	*might finish.*
Que tu finisses,	*that thou mayst*		Que tu finisses,	*that thou*	
Qu'il finisse,	*that he may*		Qu'il finît,	*that he*	
Que nous finissions,	*that we may*		Que nous finissions,	*that we*	
Que vous finissiez,	*that you may*		Que vous finissiez,	*that you*	
Qu'ils finissent,	*that they may*		Qu'ils finissent,	*that they*	

N. B. The Compound Tenses of the verb *Finir*, as well as of the two following verbs, are formed like those of the verb *Porter*.

THIRD CONJUGATION IN OIR.

RECEVOIR.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		
	Recevoir,	*to receive*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Recevant,	*receiving.*	Reçu,	*received.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
Je reçois,	*I receive.*	Je recevais,	*I was receiving.*
Tu reçois,	*thou receivest.*	Tu recevais,	*thou wast receiving.*
Il reçoit,	*he receives.*	Il recevait,	*he was receiving.*
Nous recevons,	*we receive.*	Nous recevions,	*we were receiving.*
Vous recevez,	*you receive.*	Vous receviez,	*you were receiving.*
Ils reçoivent,	*they receive.*	Ils recevaient,	*they were receiving.*

PRETERIT DEFINITE.		FUTURE.	
Je reçus,	*I received.*	Je recevrai,	*I shall receive.*
Tu reçus,	*thou receivedst.*	Tu recevras,	*thou wilt receive.*
Il reçut,	*he received.*	Il recevra,	*he will receive.*
Nous reçûmes,	*we received.*	Nous recevrons,	*we shall receive.*
Vous reçûtes,	*you received.*	Vous recevrez,	*you will receive.*
Ils reçurent,	*they received.*	Ils recevront,	*they will receive.*

CONDITIONAL.		IMPERATIVE.	
Je recevrais,	*I should receive.*		
Tu recevrais,	*thou shouldst receive.*	Reçois,	*receive (thou.)*
Il recevrait,	*he should receive.*		
Nous recevrions,	*we should receive.*	Recevons,	*let us receive.*
Vous recevriez,	*you should receive.*	Recevez,	*receive (ye.)*
Ils recevraient,	*they should receive.*		

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.			IMPERFECT.		
Que je reçoive,	*that I may*	*receive.*	Que je reçusse,	*that I*	*might receive.*
Que tu reçoives,	*that thou mayst*		Que tu reçusses,	*that thou*	
Qu'il reçoive,	*that he may*		Qu'il reçût,	*that he*	
Que nous recevions,	*that we may*		Que nous reçussions,	*that we*	
Que vous receviez,	*that you may*		Que vous reçussiez,	*that you*	
Qu'ils reçoivent,	*that they may*		Qu'ils reçussent,	*that they*	

FOURTH CONJUGATION IN RE.

RENDRE.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		
	Rendre,	*to render*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Rendant,	*rendering.*	Rendu,	*rendered*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
Je rends,	*I render.*	Je rendais,	*I was rendering.*
Tu rends,	*thou renderest.*	Tu rendais,	*thou wast rendering.*
Il rend,	*he renders.*	Il rendait,	*he was rendering.*
Nous rendons,	*we render.*	Nous rendions,	*we were rendering.*
Vous rendez,	*you render.*	Vous rendiez,	*you were rendering.*
Ils rendent,	*they render.*	Ils rendaient,	*they were rendering.*

PRETERIT.		FUTURE.	
Je rendis,	*I rendered.*	Je rendrai,	*I shall render.*
Tu rendis,	*thou renderedst.*	Tu rendras,	*thou wilt render.*
Il rendit,	*he rendered.*	Il rendra,	*he will render.*
Nous rendîmes,	*we rendered.*	Nous rendrons,	*we shall render*
Vous rendîtes,	*you rendered.*	Vous rendrez,	*you will render*
Ils rendirent,	*they rendered.*	Ils rendront,	*they will render*

CONDITIONAL.		IMPERATIVE.	
Je rendrais,	*I should render.*		
Tu rendrais,	*thou shouldst render.*	Rends,	*render (thou.)*
Il rendrait,	*he should render*		
Nous rendrions,	*we should render.*	Rendons,	*let us render.*
Vous rendriez,	*you should render.*	Rendez,	*render (ye.)*
Ils rendraient,	*they should render.*		

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.			IMPERFECT.		
Que je rende,	*that I may*	*render.*	Que je rendisse,	*that I*	*might render.*
Que tu rendes,	*that thou mayst*		Que tu rendisses,	*that thou*	
Qu'il rende,	*that he may*		Qu'il rendît,	*that he*	
Que nous rendions,	*that we may*		Que nous rendissions,	*that we*	
Que vous rendiez,	*that you may*		Que vous rendissiez,	*that you*	
Qu'ils rendent,	*that they may*		Qu'ils rendissent,	*that they*	

CONJUGATION OF THE REFLECTED VERB SE PROMENER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	Se promener.	*to walk*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Se promenant,	*walking.*	Promené,	*walked.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je me promène,	*I walk, do walk, or am walking.*
Tu te promènes,	*thou walkest, &c.*
Il se promène,	*he walks, &c.*
Nous nous promenons,	*we walk, &c.*
Vous vous promenez,	*you walk, &c.*
Ils se promènent,	*they walk, &c.*

IMPERFECT.

Je me promenais,	*I was walking,* or *walked.*

PRETERIT.

Je me promenai,	*I walked, or did walk.*

FUTURE.

Je me promènerai,	*I shall or will walk.*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je me promènerais,	*I should or would walk.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Promène-toi,	*walk (thou.)*
Promenons-nous,	*let us walk.*
Promenez-vous,	*walk (ye or you.)*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Que je me promène,	*that I may walk.*

IMPERFECT.

Que je me promenasse,	*that I might walk.*

N. B. The pupil can learn the other persons of the preceding tenses, by referring to the verb *Porter.*

COMPOUND TENSES OF THE REFLECTED VERB SE PROMENER.

Comp. Infin. Pres.,	S'être promené,	*to have walked.*
" *Pres. Part.*,	S'étant promené,	*having walked.*
" *Indic. Pres.*,	Je me suis promené,	*I have walked.*
" " *Imp.*,	Je m'étais promené,	*I had walked.*
" " *Pret.*,	Je me fus promené,	*I had walked.*
" " *Fut.*,	Je me serai promené,	*I shall have walked.*
" *Cond. Pres.*,	Je me serais promené,	*I should have walked.*
" *Subj. Pres.*.	Que je me sois promené,	*that I may have walked.*
" " *Imp.*,	Que je me fusse promené,	*that I might have walked.*

CONJUGATION OF THE REFLECTED VERB S'EN ALLER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	S'en aller,	*to go away.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
S'en allant,	*going away.*	En allé,	*gone away.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je m'en vais,	*I go away, do go away*, or *am going away.*
Tu t'en vas,	*thou goest away, dost go away*, or *art* "
Il s'en va.	*he goes away, does go away*, or *is* "
Nous nous en allons,	*we go away, do go away*, or *are* "
Vous vous en allez,	*you go away, do go away*, or *are* "
Ils s'en vont,	*they go away, do go away*, or *are* "

IMPERFECT.

Je m'en allais,	*I went away, did go away*, or *was going away.*
Tu t'en allais,	*thou wentest away, didst go away*, or *wast* "
Il s'en allait,	*he went away, did go away*, or *was going away.*
Nous nous en allions,	*we went away, did go away*, or *were going away*
Vous vous en alliez,	*you went away, did go away*, or *were going away.*
Ils s'en allaient,	*they went away, did go away*, or *were going away*

PRETERIT.

Je m'en allai,	*I went away* or *did go away.*
Tu t'en allas,	*thou wentest away* or *didst go away.*
Il s'en alla,	*he went away* or *did go away.*
Nous nous en allâmes,	*we went away* or *did go away.*
Vous vous en allâtes,	*you went away* or *did go away.*
Ils s'en allèrent,	*they went away* or *did go away.*

FUTURE.

Je m'en irai,	*I shall* or *will go away.*
Tu t'en iras,	*thou shalt* or *wilt go away.*
Il s'en ira,	*he shall* or *will go away.*
Nous nous en irons,	*we shall* or *will go away.*
Vous vous en irez,	*you shall* or *will go away.*
Ils s'en iront,	*they shall* or *will go away.*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je m'en irais,	*I should, would, could,* or *might go away.*
Tu t'en irais,	*thou shouldst, wouldst, couldst,* or *mighist go away.*
Il s'en irait,	*he should, would, could* or *might go away.*
Nous nous en irions,	*we should, would, could,* or *might go away.*
Vous vous en iriez,	*you should, would, could,* or *might go away.*
Ils s'en iraient,	*they should, would, could,* or *might go away.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Va-t'en,	*go (thou) away.*
Allons-nous-en,	*let us go away.*
Allez-vous-en,	*go (you) away.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Que je m'en aille,	*that I may go away.*
Que tu t'en ailles,	*that thou mayst go away.*
Qu'il s'en aille,	*that he may go away.*
Que nous nous en allions,	*that we may go away.*
Que vous vous en allier,	*that you may go away.*
Qu'ils s'en aillent,	*hat they may go away.*

IMPERFECT.

Que je m'en allasse,	*that I might go away.*
Que tu t'en allasses,	*that thou mightst go away.*
Qu'il s'en allât,	*that he might go away.*
Que nous nous en allassions,	*that we might go away.*
Que vous vous en allassiez,	*that you might go away.*
Qu'ils s'en allassent,	*that they might go away.*

COMPOUND TENSES OF S'EN ALLER.

Comp. Inf. Pres.,	S'en être allé,	*to have gone away.*
Comp. Pres. Part.	S'en étant allé,	*having gone away.*
Comp. Indic. Pres.,	Je m'en suis allé,	*I have gone away.*
" *Imp.*,	Je m'en étais allé,	*I had gone away.*
" *Pret.*,	Je m'en fus allé,	*I had gone away.*
" *Fut.*,	Je m'en serai allé,	*I shall have gone away.*
Comp. Cond. Pres.,	Je m'en serais allé,	*I should have gone away.*
" *Subj. Pres.*,	Que je m'en sois allé,	*That I may have gone away.*
" " *Imp.*,	Que je m'en fusse allé,	*That I might have gone away*

CONJUGATION OF THE REFLECTED VERB S'ASSEOIR.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	S'asseoir,	*to sit down.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
S'asseyant,	*sitting down.*	Assis,	*sat down.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je m'assieds,	*I sit down, or am sitting.*
Tu t'assieds,	*thou sittest down.*
Il s'assied,	*he sits down.*
Nous nous asseyons,	*we sit down.*
Vous vous asseyez,	*you sit down.*
Ils s'asseient,	*they sit down.*

IMPERFECT.

Je m'asseyais,	*I was sitting down.*
Tu t'asseyais,	*Thou wast* "
Il s'asseyait,	*He was* "
Nous nous asseyions,	*We were* "
Vous vous asseyiez,	*You were* "
Ils s'asseyaient,	*They were* "

PRETERIT.

Je m'assis,	*I sat down.*
Tu t'assis,	*Thou sattest down.*
Il s'assit,	*He sat down.*
Nous nous assîmes,	*We sat down.*
Vous vous assîtes,	*You sat down.*
Ils s'assirent,	*They sat down.*

FUTURE.

Je m'asseierai,	*I shall sit down.*
Tu t'asseieras,	*Thou wilt sit down.*
Il s'asseiera,	*He will sit down.*
Nous nous asseierons,	*We shall sit down.*
Vous vous asseierez,	*You will sit down.*
Ils s'asseieront, *or*	*They will sit down,* or
Je m'assiérai,	*I shall sit down.*
&c., &c.,	*&c., &c.,*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je m'asseierais,	*I should sit down.*
Tu t'asseierais,	*Thou shouldst sit down.*
Il s'asseierait,	*He should sit down.*
Nous nous asseierions,	*We should sit down.*
Vous vous asseieriez,	*You should sit down.*
Ils s'asseieraient, *or,*	*They should sit down,* or
Je m'assiérais,	*I should sit down.*
&c., &c.	*&c., &c*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Assieds-toi,	*sit down (thou.)*
Asseyons-nous,	*let us sit down.*
Asseyez-vous,	*sit down (you.)*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Que je m'asseie,	*that I may sit down.*
Que tu t'asseies,	*that thou mayst sit down.*
Qu'il s'asseie,	*that he may sit down.*
Que nous nous asseyions,	*that we may sit down.*
Que vous vous asseyiez,	*that you may sit down.*
Qu'ils s'asseient,	*that they may sit down.*

IMPERFECT.

Que je m'assisse,	*that I might sit down.*
Que tu t'assisses,	*that thou mightst sit down.*
Qu'il s'assît,	*that he might sit down.*
Que nous nous assissions,	*that we might sit down.*
Que vous vous assissiez,	*that you might sit down.*
Qu'ils s'assissent,	*that they might sit down.*

N. B. The Compound Tenses of this verb are formed with the Auxiliary verb *Etre.*

CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERB,
Y AVOIR. *THERE TO BE.*

Inf. Pres., Y avoir, *There to be.* — *Pres. Participle.*, Y ayant, *There being.*

	AFFIRMATIVELY.	INTERROGATIVELY.	NEGATIVELY.
Ind. Pres.,	Il y a,	y a-t-il?	il n'y a pas.
	There is,	*is there?*	*there is not.*
	There are.	*are there?*	*there are not.*
Ind. Imp.,	Il y avait,	y avait-il?	il n'y avait pas.
	There was,	*was there?*	*there was not.*
	There were.	*were there?*	*there were not.*
Ind. Pret.,	Il y eut,	y eut-il?	il n'y eut pas.
	There was,	*was there?*	*there was not.*
	There were.	*were there?*	*there were not.*
Ind. Fut.,	Il y aura,	y aura-t-il?	il n'y aura pas.
	There will be.	*will there be?*	*there will not be.*
Cond. Pres.,	Il y aurait,	y aurait-il?	il n'y aurait pas.
	There would be.	*would there be?*	*there would not be.*
Subj. Pres.,	Qu'il y ait,		qu'il n'y ait pas.
	That there may be.		*that there may not be.*
Subj. Imp.,	Qu'il y eût,		qu'il n'y eût pas.
	That there might be.		*that there might not be.*

COMPOUND TENSES OF Y AVOIR.

Comp. Infin. Pres.,	Y avoir eu,	*there to have been.*
" *Pres. Part.,*	Y ayant eu,	*there having been.*
" *Indic. Pres.,*	Il y a eu,	*there has or have been.*
" " *Imp.,*	Il y avait eu,	*there had been.*
" " *Pret.,*	Il y eut eu,	*there had been.*
" " *Fut.,*	Il y aura eu,	*there will have been.*
" *Cond. Pres.,*	Il y aurait eu,	*there would have been.*
" *Subj. Pres.,*	Qu'il y ait eu,	*that there may have been.*
" " *Imp.,*	Qu'il y eût eu,	*that there might have been.*

CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERB
FALLOIR, TO BE NECESSARY.
(corresponding to the English verb *must.*)

Inf. Present,	Falloir,	*to be necessary.*
Past Participle,	Fallu,	*been necessary.*
Ind. Pres.,	Il faut,	*it is necessary.*
" *Imp.,*	Il fallait,	*it was necessary.*
" *Pret.,*	Il fallut,	*it was necessary.*
" *Fut.,*	Il faudra,	*it will be necessary*
Cond. Pres.,	Il faudrait,	*it would be necessary.*
Subj. Pres.,	Qu'il faille,	*that it may be necessary.*
" *Imp.,*	Qu'il fallût,	*that it might be necessary.*

N. B. The Compound Tenses of this verb are conjugated with *Avoir*, in the third person singular only; thus,

Comp. Ind. Pres.,	Il a fallu,	*it has been necessary.*
	&c., &c.,	*&c., &c.*

Remark 1.—The impersonal verb *Il faut* is followed by the subjunctive mood, the *present* tense of the subjunctive being used after the *present*, *Il faut*, and the future, *Il faudra;* and the *preterit* of the subjunctive after the other tenses of *Il faut.*

EXAMPLES.

I must be,	Il faut que je sois.
Thou must be,	Il faut que tu sois.
He must be,	Il faut qu'il soit.
We must be,	Il faut que nous soyons.
You must be,	Il faut que vous soyez.
They must be,	Il faut qu'ils soient.

I must not *Thou must not* *My brother must not*	*go out.*	Il ne faut pas	que je sorte. que tu sortes. que mon frère sorte.
Must we *Must you* *Must the boys*	*go out?*	Faut-il	que nous sortions? que vous sortiez? que les garçons sortent?
Must I not *Must she not* *Must not my sisters*	*come?*	Ne faut-il pas	que je vienne? qu'elle vienne? que mes sœurs viennent?

It is necessary for me to go out.	Il faut que je sorte.
It was necessary for me to go out.	Il fallait que je sortisse.
It will be necessary for me to go.	Il faudra que j'aille.
It would be necessary for me to go.	Il faudrait que j'allasse.

REMARK 2. *Must have* may also be expressed thus:

I must have money,	Il me faut de l'argent.
Thou must have books,	Il te faut des livres.
My brother must have books,	Il faut des livres à mon frère.
It will be necessary for me to have books,	Il me faudra des livres.
It was necessary for us to have money,	Il nous fallait de l'argent.
It would be necessary for you to have friends,	Il vous faudrait des amis.
You will want friends,	Il vous faudra des amis.

CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERB PLEUVOIR, *TO RAIN.*

Inf. Pres.,	Pleuvoir,	*to rain.*
Pres. Part.,	Pleuvant,	*raining.*
Past. Part.,	Plu,	*rained.*
Ind. Pres.,	Il pleut,	*it rains.*
" *Imp.,*	Il pleuvait,	*it was raining.*
" *Pret.,*	Il plut,	*it rained.*
" *Fut.,*	Il pleuvra,	*it will rain.*
Cond. Pres.,	Il pleuvrait,	*it would rain.*
Subj. Pres.,	Qu'il pleuve,	*that it may rain.*
" *Imp.,*	Qu'il plût,	*that it might rain.*

N. B. The Compound Tenses of this verb are formed with Avoir; as

Comp. Indic. Pres.,	Il a plu,	*It has rained.*

THE FORMATION OF THE TENSES OF FRENCH VERBS.

§ 1. It has been already remarked that French verbs have *five primitive* tenses, from which all the other tenses are formed; viz. THE PRESENT OF THE INFINITIVE, THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE, THE PAST PARTICIPLE, THE PRESENT OF THE INDICATIVE, and THE PRETERIT DEFINITE OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 2. From the PRESENT OF THE INFINITIVE two tenses are formed; 1. The *Future Absolute*, by the change of *r*, *re*, or *oir* into *rai*: as, *porter*, *je porterai*; *rendre*, *je rendrai*; *recevoir*, *je recevrai*.

2. The *Conditional Present*, by the change of *r*, *re*, or *oir* into *rais*: as, *porter*, *je porterais*; *rendre*, *je rendrais*; *recevoir*, *je recevrais*.

§ 3. From the PRESENT PARTICIPLE three tenses are formed; 1. The *plural* of the *Indicative Present*, by the change of *ant* into *ons*, *ez*, *ent*: as, *portant*, *nous portons*, *vous portez*, *ils portent*; *finissant*, *nous finissons*, *vous finissez*, *ils finissent*; *rendant*, *nous rendons*, *vous rendez*, *ils rendent*.

Except verbs of the *third* conjugation, which, in the third person plural of the Indicative Present, change *evant* into *oivent*: as, *recevant*, *nous recevons*, *vous recevez*, *ils* REÇOIVENT.

2. The *Indicative Imperfect*, by changing *ant* into *ais*: as, *donnant*, *je donnais*; *finissant*, *je finissais*; *rendant*, *je rendais*; *recevant*; *je recevais*.

3. The *Subjunctive Present*, by changing *ant* into *e*: as, *donnant*, *que je donne*; *finissant*, *que je finisse*; *rendant*, *que je rende*.

Except verbs of the *third* conjugation, which change *evant* into *oive*: as, *recevant*, *que je* REÇOIVE.

§ 4. From the PAST PARTICIPLE are formed all the *Compound* tenses, by means of the auxiliary verbs *Avoir* and *Etre*.

§5. From the PRESENT OF THE INDICATIVE the Imperative is formed by omitting the pronouns *tu*, *nous*, *vous*; and in verbs of the *first* conjugation, omitting the *s* of the second person singular: as, *tu portes*, *porte*; *nous portons*, *portons*; *vous portez*, *portez*, *tu finis*, *finis*; *nous finissons*, *finissons*; *vous finissez*, *finissez*.

§6. From the PRETERIT DEFINITE the *Subjunctive Imperfect* is formed by changing *ai* into *asse* in the *first* conjugation, and adding *se* in the second, third, and fourth conjugations: as *je donnai*, *que je donnasse*; *je finis*, *que je finisse*; *je reçus*, *que je reçusse*; *je rendis*, *que je rendisse*.

COMPOUND TENSES.

1. The compound tenses of verbs are formed by prefixing to their past participle the simple tenses either of the verb *Avoir* or the verb *Etre*.

2. All *active* verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *Avoir*, to have.

3. All *passive* verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *Etre*, to be.

4. All *reflected* verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *Etre*, to be.

5. Some *neuter* verbs are always conjugated with *Etre*, to be; some are always conjugated with *Avoir*, to have; while others are conjugated sometimes with *Avoir* and sometimes with *Etre*, according to their meaning. See the following list.

A List of Neuter Verbs which are always conjugated with *Etre*, to be

Aller,	*to go.*	Parvenir,	*to succeed.*
Arriver,	*to arrive.*	Partir,	*to set out.*
Choir,	*to fall.*	Provenir,	*to arise.*
Décéder,	*to die.*	Redevenir,	*to become again.*
Devenir,	*to become.*	Repartir,	*to start again*
Disconvenir	*to disagree.*	Résulter,	*to result.*
Echoir,	*to fall.*	Retomber,	*to fall again.*
Eclore,	*to hatch.*	Revenir,	*to come back*

Intervenir,	*to intervene.*	Survenir,	*to befall.*
Mourir,	*to die.*	Tomber,	*to fall.*
Naître,	*to be born.*	Venir,	*to come.*

REMARK. The neuter verbs which are conjugated with *Etre* only, express an idea either of *motion* or *rest.*

EXAMPLES.

COMPOUND TENSES
OF THE ACTIVE VERB DONNER, TO GIVE.

Infin. Pres.,	Avoir donné,	*to have given.*
Pres. Part.,	Ayant donné,	*having given.*
Indic. Pres.,	J'ai donné,	*I have given.*
" *Imp.,*	J'avais donné,	*I had given.*
" *Pret.,*	J'eus donné,	*I had given.*
" *Fut.,*	J'aurai donné,	*I shall have given.*
Cond. Pres.,	J'aurais donné,	*I should have given.*
Subj. Pres.,	Que j'aie donné,	*that I may have given.*
" *Imp.,*	Que j'eusse donné,	*that I might have given.*

PASSIVE VOICE OF THE VERB *AIMER.* TO LOVE.

Inf. Pres.,	Etre aimé,	*to be loved.*
Pres. Part.,	Etant aimé,	*being loved.*
Indic. Pres.,	Je suis aimé,	*I am loved.*
" *Imp.,*	J'étais aimé,	*I was loved.*
" *Pret.,*	Je fus aimé,	*I was loved.*
" *Fut.,*	Je serai aimé,	*I shall be loved.*
Cond. Pres.,	Je serais aimé,	*I should be loved.*
Imperative,	Sois aimé,	*be thou loved.*
"	Soyons aimés,	*let us be loved.*
"	Soyez aimés,	*be ye loved.*
Subj. Pres.,	Que je sois aimé,	*that I may be loved.*
" *Imp.,*	Que je fusse aimé,	*that I might be loved.*

COMPOUND TENSES
OF THE PASSIVE VOICE OF AIMER, TO LOVE.

Compound of the Infinitive and Past Participle.

Avoir été aimé, *to have been loved.*

Compound of the Present and Past Participles.

Ayant été aimé, *having been loved.*

Comp. Indic. Pres.,	J'ai été aimé,	*I have been loved.*
" *Imp.*,	J'avais été aimé,	*I had been loved.*
" *Pret.*,	J'eus été aimé,	*I had been loved.*
" *Fut.*,	J'aurai été aimé,	*I shall have been loved.*
" *Cond. Pres.*,	J'aurais été aimé,	*I should have been loved.*
" *Subj. Pres.*,	Que j'aie été aimé,	*that I may have been loved.*
" " *Imp.*,	Que j'eusse été aimé,	*that I might have been loved.*

COMPOUND TENSES

OF THE NEUTER VERB TOMBER, TO FALL.

Inf. Present,	Etre tombé,	*to have fallen.*
Present Participle,	Etant tombé,	*having fallen.*
Ind. Pres.,	Je suis tombé,	*I have fallen.*
" *Imp.*,	J'étais tombé,	*I had fallen.*
" *Pret.*,	Je fus tombé,	*I had fallen.*
" *Fut.*,	Je serai tombé,	*I shall have fallen.*
Cond. Pres.,	Je serais tombé,	*I should have fallen.*
Subj. Pres.,	Que je sois tombé,	*that I may have fallen.*
" *Imp.*	Que je fusse tombé,	*that I might have fallen.*

N. B. For an example of the Compound Tenses of REFLECTED VERBS, see *Se Promener*, page 123.

VERBS CONJUGATED NEGATIVELY.

1. Verbs are conjugated negatively in their *simple* tenses by placing *ne* before and *pas* after them.

2. The *compound* tenses are conjugated negatively by placing *ne* before the *auxiliary* and *pas* after it.

3. *Ne* is written *n'* before a vowel or silent *h*.

EXAMPLES.

Infinitive Present.	N'aimer pas, *or* Ne pas aimer,	*not to love.*
Comp. Inf Pres.,	N'avoir pas aimé,	*not to have loved.*
Pres. Participle,	N'aimant pas,	*not loving.*
Comp. Pres. Part.,	N'ayant pas aimé,	*not having loved.*
Indicative Pres.,	Je n'aime pas,	*I do not love.*
Comp. Indic. Pres.,	Je n'ai pas aimé,	*I have not loved.*
Indic. Imp.,	Je n'aimais pas,	*I was not loving.*

Comp. Indic. Imp.,	Je n'avais pas aimé,	*I had not loved*
Indic. Pret.,	Je n'aimai pas,	*I loved not.*
Comp. Indic. Pret.,	Je n'eus pas aimé,	*I had not loved.*
Indicative Future,	Je n'aimerai pas,	*I shall not love.*
Comp Indic. Fut.,	Je n'aurai pas aimé,	*I shall not have loved.*
Conditional Pres.,	Je n'aimerais pas,	*I should not love.*
" *Past.*,	Je n'aurais pas aimé,	*I should not have loved.*
Imperative,	N'aime pas,	*do (thou) not love.*
	N'aimons pas,	*let us not love.*
	N'aimez pas,	*love not (you.)*
Subj. Pres.,	Que je n'aime pas,	*that I may not love.*
Comp. Subj. Pres.,	Que je n'aie pas aimé,	*that I may not have loved.*
Subj. Imp.,	Que je n'aimasse pas,	*that I might not love.*
Comp. Subj. Imp.,	Que je n'eusse pas aimé,	*that I might not have loved.*

VERBS CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY.

1. A verb is conjugated interrogatively in its simple tenses by placing the pronoun, which is the subject or nominative of the verb, *after* the verb, and connecting them by a hyphen.

2. The compound tenses are conjugated interrogatively by placing the pronoun, which is the subject of the verb, *after the auxiliary.*

3. When the verb which is followed by the pronoun *il, elle,* or *on,* ends with a vowel, the letter *t,* preceded and followed by a hyphen, is placed between the verb and the pronoun.

4. When, by placing the pronoun *je* after a verb in the first person singular, a harsh souud would be caused, the phrase *Est-ce-que* is prefixed to the verb; as, Do I sleep? *Est-ce que je dors?* Am I finishing? *Est-ce que je finis?*

Example of a verb conjugated interrogatively.

Ind. Pres.,	Donné-je, *or*	*do I give?*
	Est-ce que je donne,	
Comp. Ind. Pres.,	Ai-je donné,	*have I given?*
Ind. Imperf.,	Donnais-je,	*was I giving?*
Comp. Ind. Imper.,	Avais-je donné,	*had I given?*

Indic. Pret.,	Donnai-je,	*did I give?*
Comp. Ind. Pret.,	Eus-je donné,	*had I given?*
Ind. Fut.,	Donnerai-je,	*shall I give?*
Comp. Ind. Fut.,	Aurai-je donné,	*shall I have given?*
Conditional Pres.,	Donnerais-je,	*should I give?*
Comp. Cond. Pres.,	Aurais-je donné,	*should I have given?*

The indicative and conditional moods are the only moods used in asking questions.

EXAMPLE OF A VERB
CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

Ind. Pres.,	Ne donné-je pas, *or* Est-ce que je ne donne pas,	*do I not give?*
Comp Ind. Pres.,	N'ai-je-pas donné,	*have I not given?*
Ind. Imperfect,	Ne donnais-je pas,	*was I not giving?*
Comp. Ind. Imp.,	N'avais-je pas donné,	*had I not given?*
Ind. Pret.,	Ne donnai-je pas,	*did I not give?*
Comp. Ind. Pret.,	N'eus-je pas donné,	*had I not given?*
Ind. Future,	Ne donnerai-je pas,	*shall I not give?*
Comp. Ind. Fut.,	N'aurai-je pas donné,	*shall I not have given?*
Conditional Pres.,	Ne donnerais-je pas,	*should I not give?*
Com. Cond. Pres.,	N'aurais-je pas donné,	*should I not have given?*

COMPARISON
BETWEEN THE TENSES OF ENGLISH VERBS AND THE TENSES OF FRENCH VERBS.

THE PRESENT TENSE OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 1.—There are, in English, *three* forms of the *Present Tense*, *I write*, *I do write*, *I am writing*. But these three forms of expression, although they differ slightly in meaning, can be translated into French by *one* form only, viz., *J'écris*.

This is one of the difficulties of young students, who are apt to translate *I am writing* by *je suis écrivant*, *I do write* by *je fais écrire*, &c.; but it must be remembered that there is but *one* form of the present tense in French, *j'écris*.

PRETERIT DE
lated by the Englis
Definite expre
French has entirely

PARLAI. . I
I

TENSE. { PRETERI
PASSÉ IN
COMPOUN

Tense, in Engli
terit Indefinite,

visor.

Indefinite is used
tion and in writin
employed; as,

your purse?

doing these
in New-York,
ton, where I
enjoyed my-

Indefinite is used in
that has not yet ex

this morn-

Indefinite also expr
; as,

my grand-

Q
g
Q
bourse?
Q
jours
et de la
sieurs
AMUSÉ

J'A

AV
père?

3. The *Preterit Indefinite* must be used for the English Imperfect and Perfect tenses, when they are accompanied by the words *always*, *ever*, *never*, and *thus far*.

THE PLUPERFECT TENSE { PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT. / PASSÉ ANTÉRIEUR.

§ 6. The English *Pluperfect* Tense is translated into French by two tenses, the *Compound of the Imperfect*, or *Plus-que-parfait*, and the *Compound of the Preterit*, or *Passé Antérieur*. Both of these tenses correspond in meaning with the English tense, expressing an action that had taken place before another event which is also past.

1. The *Compound of the Imperfect* is used when we wish to express merely that one event occurred before another past event, without the latter's being a consequence of the former; as,

We *had dined*, when my father arrived.	*Nous* AVIONS DINÉ, *quand mon père arriva.*

2. But when the idea conveyed by the second verb, is a consequence of, or depends upon, the event expressed by the first verb, the *Compound of the Preterit* is used; as,

As soon as we *had dined*, we went out.	*Aussitôt que nous* EÛMES DINÉ, *nous sortîmes.*

The *Compound of the Preterit* is hardly ever used except after such conjunctions as *aussitôt que*, as soon as; *dès que*, as soon as; *lorsque*, when; and the adverb *quand*, when.

FIRST FUTURE. FUTUR ABSOLU,
SECOND FUTURE. { FUTUR ANTÉRIEUR, or / COMPOUND OF THE FUTURE.

§ 7. (1.) The *First Future* tense of English verbs corresponds with the *Futur Absolu* of French Verbs; as,

I *will go* with you to-morrow.	J'IRAI *avec vous demain.*

(2.) The *Second Future* corresponds with the *Futur antérieur* or *Compound of the future*; as,

I *shall have finished* my letter before your arrival.	J'AURAI FINI *ma lettre avant votre arrivée.*

But *will* in English does not always imply *futurity;* sometimes it means *willingness*, and must be translated by the verb *Vouloir;* as,

Will you read now?	VOULEZ-*vous lire à présent?*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

§ 8. No mood in French corresponds with the *Present tense* of the English Potential Mood.

1. *May* and *can* are translated by the present tense of the Indicative Mood of the verb *Pouvoir;* as,

I *may* do it.	*Je* PEUX *le faire.*
He *can* walk.	*Il* PEUT *marcher.*

2. *May* and *can* are also translated by the present of the Subjunctive of *Pouvoir*, or the present of the Subjunctive of the radical verb; as,

Bring it, that I *may* see it.	*Apportez-le, afin que je* PUISSE *le voir*, or, *afin que je le* VOIE.

3. *Must* is translated by some tense of the verb *Falloir*, as has been explained on pages 128, 129.

§ 9. The *Imperfect Tense* of the Potential Mood in English prefixes *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should* to the radical verb. These forms of expression are often translated into French by the *Present* of the *Conditional Mood;* as,

I *should like* to see your sister.	J'AIMERAIS *à voir votre sœur.*
I *would go* with you, if I were not sick.	J'IRAIS *avec vous, si je n'étais pas malade.*

1. But when *might* implies *power*, *ability*, it is translated by the

Conditional Present of the verb *Pouvoir*, and the radical verb is put in the Infinitive Mood; as,

He *might* do it, if he chose.	*Il* POURRAIT *le faire, s'il le voulait.*

2. When *could* implies *power*, and is spoken emphatically, it is translated by a past tense of the verb *Pouvoir*, in speaking of past events, and by the Conditional Present of *Pouvoir* in speaking of the present or the future; as,

I *could* not go out yesterday.	*Je ne* PUS *pas sortir hier.*
I *could* go out now, if I had my hat.	*Je* POURRAIS *sortir à présent, si j'avais mon chapeau.*

3. When *would* implies *willingness*, it is translated by the Indicative Imperfect of the verb *Vouloir*, and the radical verb is put in the Infinitive Mood; as,

If you *would* come with me, you would see him.	*Si vous* VOULIEZ *venir avec moi, vous le verriez.*

4. *Should*, when it means *ought*, and conveys the idea of *duty*, is expressed by the Conditional Present of the verb *Devoir*; as,

These children *should* go to school.	*Ces enfants* DEVRAIENT *aller à l'école.*

5. When *should* follows *if*, it is included in the radical verb, which must be put in the Indicative Mood, imperfect tense; as,

If he *should come*, what should I say to him?	*S'il* VENAIT, *que lui dirais-je?*

§ 10. The *Perfect Tense* of the Potential Mood in English prefixes *may have*, *can have*, or *must have*, to the past participle of the radical verb.

1. *May have* and *can have*, followed by a past participle, are translated into French variously, as will be seen by the following examples.

I may have done it, without knowing it.	*Il est possible que je aie fait sans le savoir;* or *Je l'ai peut-être fait, sans le savoir.*
How can you have made so many mistakes?	*Comment avez-vous pu faire tant de fautes?*

2. *Must have*, followed by a past participle, is variously translated, as the following examples will show:

You must have seen him.	*Il faut que vous l'ayez vu.*
He must have broken the window; no other person was near the house.	*Il faut que ce soit lui qui a cassé la fenêtre; il n'y avait pas d'autre personne près de la maison;* or, *C'est lui seul qui a cassé la fenêtre; &c.*
Your exercise is badly written; your pen must have been bad.	*Votre thème est mal écrit; il faut que votre plume ait été mauvaise.*

§ 11. The *Pluperfect Tense* of the Potential Mood, in English, prefixes *might have*, *could have*, *would have*, or *should have*, to the past participle of the radical verb. These forms of expression are often translated into French by the *Conditional Past*; as,

I *would have given* you some money, if you had asked me.	*Je vous* AURAIS DONNÉ *de l'argent, si vous m'en aviez demandé.*
I *should have gone out*, if it had not rained.	*Je* SERAIS SORTI, *s'il n'avait pas plu.*

1. But *could have* and *might have*, implying *power*, *ability*, and followed by a past participle, are translated by the Conditional Past of *Pouvoir*, followed by the Infinitive; as,

You *might have succeeded.*	*Vous* AURIEZ PU RÉUSSIR.

2. *Should have*, implying *duty* or *obligation*, and followed by a past participle, is translated by the Conditional Past of *Devoir*, followed by the Infinitive; as,

You *should have done* it yourself.	*Vous* AURIEZ DU *le* FAIRE *vous-même.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD. IMPÉRATIF.

§ 12.—The *Imperative Mood* in English has only two persons, the 2nd person singular, and the 2nd person plural; which are translated by the corresponding persons of the Imperative Mood of the French verb; as,

Love (thou.)	*Aime.*
Love (ye.)	*Aimez.*

1. But in French there is another person, the 1st. person plural; as,

Aimons.	Let us love.

2. *Let him*, *let her*, and *let them*, followed by a verb, are translated by the third person singular and the third person plural of the Subjunctive Present; as,

Let him give.	*Qu'il donne.*
Let her give.	*Qu'elle donne.*
Let them give.	*Qu'ils donnent*, or, *Qu'elles donnent.*

SUBJONCTIF.

§ 13. The French *Subjunctive Mood* (Subjonctif,) presents many difficulties to the young student. A few rules are here given to assist him in using it.

The Subjunctive Mood expresses doubt. It is used,

1st. After verbs denoting *will*, *wish*, *desire*, *doubt*, *fear*, *wonder*, and in general, the emotions of the mind; as,

I *wish* you *to do* your duty.	*Je veux que vous* FASSIEZ *votre devoir.*

2nd. After a verb used interrogatively, when doubt is expressed; as,

Do you *think* he *will come?*	*Croyez-vous qu'il* VIENNE *?*

3rd. After verbs used impersonally, except such as *it is sure*, *positive*, *certain*, &c., as,

It is possible he will come.	*Il est possible qu'il* VIENNE.

4th. After an adjective in the superlative degree, followed by a relative pronoun; as,

The *best* friend that I *have.*	*Le meilleur ami que j'*AIE.

5th. After *rien*, *aucun*, *pas un*, *personne*, &c., followed by a relative pronoun; as,

We have nothing that *suits* her.	*Nous n'avons rien qui lui* CONVIENNE.

6th. After *quelque, quel que, qui que ce soit, quoi que ce soit,* and the other Indefinite Pronouns followed by *que.* (See Sect. v. Chap. x.)

Whatever *may be* your talents.	*Quels que* SOIENT *vos talents.*

7th. After the conjunctions *afin que, quoique, à moins que, avant que, bien que, de crainte que,* &c ; as,

That you *may have* more time.	*Afin que vous* AYEZ *plus de temps.*

8th. After a relative pronoun, or the adverb *où,* when the following verb expresses uncertainty ; as,

I am looking for some one that *may do* me this service.	*Je cherche quelqu'un qui me* RENDE *ce service.*

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 14. The *Subjunctive Mood* being always subordinate to a verb that precedes it, its tenses are regulated by this foregoing verb.

1. The *Present* of the Subjunctive, (also called the *Future,*) is used when the preceding verb is in the *present* or *future* of the Indicative ; as,

Do you *think*	I shall have time ? I shall be ready ? I shall see her ?	*Pensez*-vous	que *j'aie* le temps ? que je *sois* prêt ? que je la *voie* ?
He *will wait*	till I have time ; till I am ready ; till I see her.	Il *attendra*	que *j'aie* le temps; que je *sois* prêt ; que je la *voie.*

2. The *Imperfect* of the Subjunctive is used, when the verb that precedes it and requires it to be in the Subjunctive, is in the *imperfect* or *preterit* of the Indicative, or in the *Conditional* mood ; as,

He *was waiting*	till I had time ; till I should be ready; till I should see her.	Il *attendait*	que j'*eusse* le temps; que je *fusse* prêt ; que je la *visse.*
Would he *wait*	till I had time ? till I should be ready? till I should see her?	*Attendrait*-il	que j'*eusse* le temps que je *fusse* prêt ? que je la *visse* ?

Additional Examples of the Subjunctive Mood.

I order you	to do it.	*J'ordonne*	*que vous le* FASSIEZ.
I forbid you		*Je défends*	
I want you		*Je veux*	
I wish you		*Je souhaite*	
I desire you		*Je désire*	
I require you		*J'exige*	
I am glad	that you *have done it.*	*Je suis bien aise*	*que vous l'*AYEZ FAIT
I am pleased		*Je suis content*	
I am delighted		*Je suis charmé*	
I am sorry		*Je suis fâché*	
I am surprised		*Je suis surpris*	
I see with pleasure		*Je vois avec plaisir*	
I see with regret		*Je vois avec regret*	

I fear you will do that.	*Je crains que vous ne fassiez cela.*
I fear you will not do that.	*Je crains que vous ne fassiez pas cela.*
I do not fear you will do that,	*Je ne crains pas que vous fassiez cela.*
Tell them to wait for me,	*Dites-leur qu'ils m'attendent.*

N. B. Although it is not intended in this little work to teach the Idioms of the French language, the following are so important even to young students that they are inserted.

To BE, expressed by AVOIR.

1. The verb *to be* is expressed by the same mood and tense, number and person, of the verb *Avoir*, when it is followed by the adjectives *hungry*, *thirsty*, &c.; as,

I am hungry.	J'AI *faim.*
We are thirsty.	NOUS AVONS *soif.*

TO BE	hungry.	AVOIR	*faim.*
	thirsty.		*soif.*
	cold.		*froid.*
	warm.		*chaud.*
	sleepy.		*sommeil.*
	afraid.		*peur.*
	ashamed.		*honte.*
	right.		*raison.*
	wrong.		*tort.*

2. The verb *to be* is also expressed by *Avoir* in speaking of the *age* of persons; as,

How old are you?	*Quel âge* AVEZ-*vous?*
I am twenty.	J'AI *vingt ans.*

To BE, EXPRESSED BY FAIRE.

The verb *to be*, accompanied by a *noun* or an adjective denoting the *state* of the *weather*, is expressed in French by the same tense of the verb *faire*, with *il* for its *nominative*; as,

How is the weather?	*Quel temps* FAIT-*il?*
Is the weather fine?	FAIT *il beau temps?*
It will be cold to-morrow.	*Il* FERA *froid demain.*
It has been warm lately.	*Il* A FAIT *chaud depuis peu.*

To BE, EXPRESSED BY DEVOIR.

The present tense and the imperfect tense of the verb *to be*, followed by another verb in the *infinitive* mood, are expressed by the present tense and the imperfect tense of the verb *Devoir*, as,

I am to pay four dollars.	*Je* DOIS *payer quatre gourdes.*
She is to come to-night.	*Elle* DOIT *venir ce soir.*
He was to bring it to-day.	*Il* DEVAIT *l'apporter aujourd'hui.*

To BE, TO DO, EXPRESSED BY SE PORTER.

The verbs *to be* and *to do*, used in speaking of the *health*, are expressed by the same tense and person of the reflected verb *Se Porter*; as,

How are you? / How do you do?	*Comment vous portez-vous?*

VERBS.

Infinitive Mood, Present Tense.

The Auxiliary Verbs.

1 To have.
2 To be.

English of the model verbs.

3 To give.
4 To punish.
5 To owe.
6 To receive.
7 To sell.

English of the irregular verbs.

8 To acquire. 9 to go. 10 to assail. 11 to beat 12 to boil. 13 to drink. 14 to conclude. 15 to pickle. 16 to know, (*to be acquainted with persons.*) 17 to sew. 18 to run. 19 to fear. 20 to believe. 21 to grow. 22 to gather. 23 to say. 24 to sleep. 25 to write. 26 to send. 27 to do *or* make. 28 to flee. 29 to hate. 30 to join. 31 to read. 32 to shine. 33 to curse. 34 to lie, (*to tell a falsehood.*) 35 to put. 36 to grind. 37 to die. 38 to move. 39 to be born. 40 to offer. 41 to open. 42 to graze. 43 to paint. 44 to please. 45 to be able. 46 to provide. 47 to take. 48 to foretell. 49 to prevail. 50 to foresee. 51 to reduce. 52 to resolve. 53 to laugh. 54 to break. 55 to know, (*applied to inanimate objects, sciences, &c.*) 56 to serve. 57 to follow. 58 to milk. 59 to conquer. 60 to be worth. 61 to come. 62 to clothe. 63 to live. 64 to see. 65 to be willing. 66 to eat. 67 to go forward. 68 to conceal. 69 to lead. 70 to call. 71 to throw. 72 to try.

The following arrangement of the verbs was prepared by the late Charles Picot. As it was used for many years by him and other teachers with much success, it is, with a few alterations, introduced into this work.

CONJUGATION OF FRENCH VERBS.

Infinitif Présent.

1 Avoir.
2 Etre.

Models of Regular Verbs.

3 Donner,	a regular verb	of the	first	conjugation
4 Punir,	"	"	second	"
5 Devoir, 6 Recevoir,	"	"	third	"
7 Vendre,	"	"	fourth	"

Irregular Verbs.

8 Acquérir. 9 aller. 10 assaillir. 11 battre. 12 bouillir. 13 boire. 14 conclure. 15 confire. 16 connaître. 17 coudre. 18 courir. 19 craindre. 20 croire. 21 croître. 22 cueillir. 23 dire. 24 dormir. 25 écrire. 26 envoyer. 27 faire. 28 fuir. 29 haïr. 30 joindre. 31 lire. 32 luire. 33 maudire. 34 mentir. 35 mettre. 36 moudre. 37 mourir. 38 mouvoir. 39 naître. 40 offrir. 41 ouvrir. 42 paître. 43 peindre. 44 plaire. 45 pouvoir. 46 pourvoir. 47 prendre. 48 prédire. 49 prévaloir. 50 prévoir. 51 réduire. 52 résoudre. 53 rire. 54 rompre. 55 savoir. 56 servir. 57 suivre. 58 traire. 59 vaincre. 60 valoir. 61 venir. 62 vêtir. 63 vivre. 64 voir. 65 vouloir.

N. B. Before studying the following verbs, the pupil will commit to memory the remarks on the orthography of some French verbs, page 118

66 Manger. 67 avancer 68 céler. 69 mener. 70 appeler. 71 jeter. 72 essayer.

Present Participle.

1 Having. 2 being. 3 giving. 4 punishing. 5 owing 6 receiving. 7 selling. 8 acquiring. 9 going. 10 assailing. 11 beating. 12 boiling. 13 drinking. 14 concluding. 15 pickling. 16 knowing. 17 sewing. 18 running. 19 fearing. 20 believing. 21 growing. 22 gathering. 23 saying. 24 sleeping. 25 writing. 26 sending. 27 doing or making. 28 fleeing. 29 hating. 30 joining. 31 reading. 32 shining. 33 cursing. 34 lying. 35 putting. 36 grinding. 37 dying. 38 moving. 39 being born. 40 offering. 41 opening. 42 grazing. 43 painting. 44 pleasing. 45 being able. 46 providing. 47 taking. 48 foretelling. 49 prevailing. 50 foreseeing. 51 reducing. 52 resolving. 53 laughing. 54 breaking. 55 knowing. 56 serving. 57 following. 58 milking. 59 conquering. 60 being worth. 61 coming. 62 clothing. 63 living. 64 seeing. 65 being willing. 66 eating. 67 going forward. 68 concealing. 69 leading. 70 calling. 71 throwing. 72 trying.

Past Participle.

1 Had. 2 been. 3 given. 4 punished. 5 owed. 6 received. 7 sold. 8 acquired. 9 gone. 10 assailed. 11 beaten. 12 boiled. 13 drunk. 14 concluded. 15 pickled. 16 known. 17 sewed. 18 run. 19 feared. 20 believed. 21 grown. 22 gathered. 23 said. 24 slept. 25 written. 26 sent. 27 done *or* made. 28 fled. 29 hated. 30 joined. 31 read. 32 shone. 33 cursed. 34 lied. 35 put. 36 ground. 37 died. 38 moved. 39 born. 40 offered. 41 opened. 42 —— 43 painted. 44 pleased. 45 been able. 46 provided. 47 taken. 48 foretold. 49 prevailed. 50 foreseen. 51 reduced. 52 resolved. 53 laughed. 54 broken. 55 known. 56 served. 57 followed. 58 milked. 59 conquered. 60 been worth. 61 come. 62 clothed. 63 lived. 64 seen. 65 been willing. 66 eaten. 67 gone forward. 68 concealed. 69 led. 70 called. 71 thrown. 72 tried.

Participe Présent.

1 Ayant. 2 étant. 3 donnant. 4 punissant. 5 devant. 6 recevant. 7 vendant. 8 acquérant. 9 allant. 10 assaillant. 11 battant. 12 bouillant. 13 buvant. 14 concluant. 15 confisant. 16 connaissant. 17 cousant. 18 courant. 19 craignant. 20 croyant. 21 croissant. 22 cueillant. 23 disant. 24 dormant. 25 écrivant. 26 envoyant. 27 faisant. 28 fuyant. 29 haïssant. 30 joignant. 31 lisant. 32 luisant. 33 maudissant. 34 mentant. 35 mettant. 36 moulant. 37 mourant. 38 mouvant. 39 naissant. 40 offrant. 41 ouvrant. 42 paissant. 43 peignant. 44 plaisant. 45 pouvant. 46 pourvoyant. 47 prenant. 48 prédisant. 49 prévalant. 50 prévoyant. 51 réduisant. 52 résolvant. 53 riant. 54 rompant. 55 sachant. 56 servant. 57 suivant. 58 trayant. 59 vainquant. 60 valant. 61 venant. 62 vêtant. 63 vivant. 64 voyant. 65 voulant. 66 mangeant. 67 avançant. 68 célant. 69 menant. 70 appelant. 71 jetant. 72 essayant.

Participe Passé.

1 Eu. 2 été. 3 donné. 4 puni. 5 dû. 6 reçu. 7 vendu. 8 acquis. 9 allé. 10 assailli. 11 battu. 12 bouilli. 13 bu. 14 conclu. 15 confit. 16 connu. 17 cousu. 18 couru. 19 craint. 20 cru. 21 crû. 22 cueilli. 23 dit. 24 dormi. 25 écrit. 26 envoyé. 27 fait. 28 fui. 29 haï. 30 joint. 31 lu. 32 lui. 33 maudit. 34 menti. 35 mis. 36 moulu. 37 mort. 38 mu. 39 né. 40 offert. 41 ouvert. 42 *wanting*. 43 peint. 44 plu. 45 pu. 46 pourvu. 47 pris. 48 prédit. 49 prévalu. 50 prévu. 51 réduit. 52 résolu. 53 ri. 54 rompu. 55 su. 56 servi. 57 suivi. 58 trait. 59 vaincu. 60 valu. 61 venu. 62 vêtu. 63 vécu. 64 vu. 65 voulu. 66 mangé. 67 avancé. 68 célé. 69 mené. 70 appelé. 71 jeté. 72 essayé.

Indicative Mood, Present Tense.

	I,	*thou,*	*he,*	*we,*	*you,*	*they.*
1	have	hast	has	have	have	have
2	am	art	is	are	are	are
3	give	givest	gives	give	give	give
	do give *or*	dost give	does give	do give	do give	do give
	am giving	art giving	is giving	are giving	are giving	are giving.

N. B. The three forms of the present tense given in full in the verb *give* are equally applicable to nearly all the following verbs, thus,—*I punish, do punish,* or *am punishing.*

4	punish	punishest	punishes	punish	punish	punish
5	owe	owest	owes	owe	owe	owe
6	receive	receivest	receives	receive	receive	receive
7	sell	sellest	sells	sell	sell	sell
8	acquire	acquirest	acquires	acquire	acquire	acquire
9	go	goest	goes	go	go	go
10	assail	assailest	assails	assail	assail	assail
11	beat	beatest	beats	beat	beat	beat
12	boil	boilest	boils	boil	boil	boil
13	drink	drinkest	drinks	drink	drink	drink
14	conclude	concludest	concludes	conclude	conclude	conclude
15	pickle	picklest	pickles	pickle	pickle	pickle
16	know	knowest	knows	know	know	know
17	sew	sewest	sews	sew	sew	sew
18	run	runnest	runs	run	run	run
19	fear	fearest	fears	fear	fear	fear
20	believe	believest	believes	believe	believe	believe
21	grow	growest	grows	grow	grow	grow
22	gather	gatherest	gathers	gather	gather	gather
23	say	sayest	says	say	say	say
24	sleep	sleepest	sleeps	sleep	sleep	sleep
25	write	writest	writes	write	write	write
26	send	sendest	sends	send	send	send
27	do, *or*	doest	does	do	do	do
	make	makest	makes	make	make	make

Indicatif Présent.

N. B. *Je* is used before a verb beginning with a *consonant*, *j'* before a verb beginning with a vowel or silent *h*.

	Je, j'	*tu,*	*il,*	*nous,*	*vous,*	*ils.*
1	ai	as	a	avons	avez	ont
2	suis	es	est	sommes	*êtes*	sont
3	donne	donnes	donne	donnons	donnez	donnent
4	punis	punis	punit	punissons	punissez	punissent
5	dois	dois	doit	devons	devez	doivent
6	reçois	reçois	reçoit	recevons	recevez	reçoivent
7	vends	vends	vend	vendons	vendez	vendent
8	acquiers	acquiers	acquiert	acquérons	acquérez	acquièrent
9	vais	vas	va	allons	allez	vont
10	assaille	assailles	assaille	assaillons	assaillez	assaillent
11	bats	bats	bat	battons	battez	battent
12	bous	bous	bout	bouillons	bouillez	bouillent
13	bois	bois	boit	buvons	buvez	boivent
14	conclus	conclus	conclut	concluons	concluez	concluent
15	confis	confis	confit	confisons	confisez	confisent
16	connais	connais	connaît	connaissons	connaissez	connaissent
17	couds	couds	coud	cousons	cousez	cousent
18	cours	cours	court	courons	courez	courent
19	crains	crains	craint	craignons	craignez	craignent
20	crois	crois	croit	croyons	croyez	croient
21	croîs	croîs	croît	croissons	croissez	croissent
22	cueille	cueilles	cueille	cueillons	cueillez	cueillent
23	dis	dis	dit	disons	*dites*	disent
24	dors	dors	dort	dormons	dormez	dorment
25	écris	écris	écrit	écrivons	écrivez	écrivent
26	envoie	envoies	envoie	envoyons	envoyez	envoient.
27	fais	fais	fait	faisons	*faites*	font.

	I,	*thou,*	*he,*	*we,*	*you,*	*they.*
28	flee	fleest	flees	flee	flee	flee
29	hate	hatest	hates	hate	hate	hate
30	join	joinest	joins	join	join	join
31	read	readest	reads	read	read	read
32	shine	shinest	shines	shine	shine	shine
33	curse	cursest	curses	curse	curse	curse
34	lie	liest	lies	lie	lie	lie
35	put	puttest	puts	put	put	put
36	grind	grindest	grinds	grind	grind	grind
37	die	diest	dies	die	die	die
38	move	movest	moves	move	move	move
39	am born	art born	is born	are born	are born	are born
40	offer	offerest	offers	offer	offer	offer
41	open	openest	opens	open	open	open
42	graze	grazest	grazes	graze	graze	graze
43	paint	paintest	paints	paint	paint	paint
44	please	pleasest	pleases	please	please	please
45	am able *or* can	art able *or* canst	is able *or* can	are able can	are able can	are able can
46	provide	providest	provides	provide	provide	provide
47	take	takest	takes	take	take	take
48	foretell	foretellest	foretells	foretell	foretell	foretell
49	prevail	prevailest	prevails	prevail	prevail	prevail
50	foresee	foreseest	foresees	foresee	foresee	foresee
51	reduce	reducest	reduces	reduce	reduce	reduce
52	resolve	resolvest	resolves	resolve	resolve	resolve
53	laugh	laughest	laughs	laugh	laugh	laugh
54	break	breakest	breaks	break	break	break
55	know	knowest	knows	know	know	know
56	serve	servest	serves	serve	serve	serve
57	follow	followest	follows	follow	follow	follow
58	milk	milkest	milks	milk	milk	milk
59	conquer	conquerest	conquers	conquer	conquer	conquer
60	am worth	art worth	is worth	are worth	are worth	are worth
61	come	comest	comes	come	come	come
62	clothe	clothest	clothes	clothe	clothe	clothe

	Je, j'	*tu,*	*il,*	*nous,*	*vous,*	*ils.*
28	fuis	fuis	fuit	fuyons	fuyez	fuient
29	hais	hais	hait	haïssons	haïssez	haïssent
30	joins	joins	joint	joignons	joignez	joignent
31	lis	lis	lit	lisons	lisez	lisent
32	luis	luis	luit	luisons	luisez	luisent
33	maudis	maudis	maudit	maudissons	maudissez	maudissent
34	mens	mens	ment	mentons	mentez	mentent
35	mets	mets	met	mettons	mettez	mettent
36	mouds	mouds	moud	moulons	moulez	moulent
37	meurs	meurs	meurt	mourons	mourez	meurent
38	meus	meus	meut	mouvons	mouvez	meuvent
39	nais	nais	naît	naissons	naissez	naissent
40	offre	offres	offre	offrons	offrez	offrent
41	ouvre	ouvres	ouvre	ouvrons	ouvrez	ouvrent
42	pais	pais	paît	paissons	paissez	paissent
43	peins	peins	peint	peignons	peignez	peignent
44	plais	plais	plaît	plaisons	plaisez	plaisent
45	peux *or* puis	peux	peut	pouvons	pouvez	peuvent
46	pourvois	pourvois	pourvoit	pourvoyons	pourvoyez	pourvoient
47	prends	prends	prend	prenons	prenez	prennent
48	prédis	prédis	prédit	prédisons	prédisez	prédisent
49	prévaux	prévaux	prévaut	prévalons	prévalez	prévalent
50	prévois	prévois	prévoit	prévoyons	prévoyez	prévoient
51	réduis	réduis	réduit	réduisons	réduisez	réduisent
52	résous	résous	résout	résolvons	résolvez	résolvent
53	ris	ris	rit	rions	riez	rient
54	romps	romps	rompt	rompons	rompez	rompent
55	sais	sais	sait	savons	savez	savent
56	sers	sers	sert	servons	servez	servent
57	suis	suis	suit	suivons	suivez	suivent
58	trais	trais	trait	trayons	trayez	traient
59	vaincs	vaincs	vainc	vainquons	vainquez	vainquent
60	vaux	vaux	vaut	valons	valez	valent
61	viens	viens	vient	venons	venez	viennent
62	vêts	vêts	vêt	vêtons	vêtez	vêtent

	I,	*hou,*	*he,*	*we,*	*you,*	*they.*
63	live	livest	lives	live	live	live
64	see	seest	sees	see	see	see
65	am willing or will,		art willing or wilt,		is willing or will, &c.	
66	eat	eatest	eats	eat	eat	eat
67	go forward, goest forward, goes forward, &c.					
68	conceal	concealest	conceals	conceal	conceal	conceal
69	lead	leadest	leads	lead	lead	lead
70	call	callest	calls	call	call	call
71	throw	throwest	throws	throw	throw	throw
72	try	triest	tries	try	try	try

Indicative Mood, Imperfect Tense.

1	had	hadst	had	had	had	had
2	was	wast	was	were	were	were

3 gave, was giving, *or* used to give. 4 punished, was punishing, *or* used to punish.

The three forms of the imperfect tense here exhibited are applicable to the verbs that follow.

5 owed. 6 received. 7 sold. 8 acquired. 9 went. 10 assailed. 11 beat. 12 boiled. 13 drank. 14 concluded. 15 pickled. 16 knew. 17 sewed. 18 ran. 19 feared. 20 believed. 21 grew. 22 gathered. 23 said. 24 slept. 25 wrote. 26 sent. 27 did *or* made. 28 fled. 29 hated. 30 joined. 31 read. 32 shone. 33 cursed. 34 lied. 35 put. 36 ground. 37 died. 38 moved. 39 was born. 40 offered. 41 opened. 42 grazed. 43 painted. 44 pleased. 45 was able *or* could. 46 provided. 47 took. 48 foretold. 49 prevailed. 50 foresaw. 51 reduced. 52 resolved. 53 laughed. 54 broke. 55 knew. 56 served. 57 followed. 58 milked. 59 conquered. 60 was worth. 61 came. 62 clothed *or* clad. 63 lived. 64 saw. 65 was willing. 66 eat. 67 went forward. 68 concealed. 69 led. 70 called 71 threw. 72 tried.

Je, j'	*tu,*	*il,*	*nous,*	*vous,*	*ils.*
63 vis	vis	vit	vivons	vivez	vivent
64 vois	vois	voit	voyons	voyez	voient
65 veux	veux	veut	voulons	voulez	veulent
66 mange	manges	mange	mangeons	mangez	mangent
67 avance	avances	avance	avançons	avancez	avancent
68 cèle	cèles	cèle	célons	célez	cèlent
69 mène	mènes	mène	menons	menez	mènent
70 appelle	appelles	appelle	appelons	appelez	appellent
71 jette	jettes	jette	jetons	jetez	jettent
72 essaie	essaies	essaie	essayons	essayez	essaient

N. B. The pupil will observe that the second person, singular, always ends in *s*, except *peux*, *veux*, *vaux*; the first person, plural, in *ons*, except *sommes*; the second person, plural, in *ez*, except *êtes*, *dites*, *faites*.

Imparfait de l' Indicatif.

The terminations of this tense are *ais*, *ais*, *ait*, *ions*, *iez*, *aient*.

1 Avais	avais	avait	avions	aviez	avaient.
2 étais	étais	était	étions	étiez	étaient.

N. B. The *first* person singular of the following verbs is given. The *other* persons are formed from it by dropping the termination *ais*, and adding the other terminations, as given above.

3 Donnais. 4 punissais. 5 devais. 6 recevais. 7 vendais. 8 acquérais. 9 allais. 10 assaillais. 11 battais. 12 bouillais. 13 buvais. 14 concluais. 15 confisais. 16 connaissais. 17 cousais. 18 courais. 19 craignais. 20 croyais. 21 croissais. 22 cueillais. 23 disais. 24 dormais. 25 écrivais. 26 envoyais. 27 faisais. 28 fuyais. 29 haïssais. 30 joignais. 31 lisais. 32 luisais. 33 maudissais. 34 mentais. 35 mettais. 36 moulais. 37 mourais. 38 mouvais. 39 naissais. 40 offrais. 41 ouvrais. 42 paissais. 43 peignais. 44 plaisais. 45 pouvais. 46 pourvoyais. 47 prenais. 48 prédisais. 49 prévalais. 50 prévoyais. 51 réduisais. 52 résolvais. 53 riais. 54 rompais. 55 savais. 56 servais. 57 suivais. 58 trayais. 59 vainquais. 60 valais. 61 venais. 62 vêtais. 63 vivais. 64 voyais. 65 voulais. 66 mangeais. 67 avançais. 68 celais. 69 menais. 70 appelais. 71 jetais. 72 essayais.

Indicative Mood, Preterite or Past Tense.

N. B The pupil must be careful not to confound this tense with the one called Perfect in most English Grammars. The latter corresponds to the Compound of the Present, the Parfait Indéfini, or Passé Indéfini of French verbs; as, I have loved, *J'ai aimé.*

1 Had	hadst	had	had	had	had.
2 was	wast	was	were	were	were.

3 gave *or* did give, gavest *or* didst give, etc. 4 punished *or* did punish, punishedst *or* didst punish, etc. 5 owed *or* did owe, etc. 6 received *or* did receive, etc. 7 sold *or* did sell, soldest *or* didst sell, etc. 8 acquired. 9 went. 10 assailed. 11 beat. 12 boiled. 13 drank. 14 concluded. 15 pickled. 16 knew. 17 sewed. 18 ran. 19 feared. 20 believed. 21 grew. 22 gathered. 23 said. 24 slept. 25 wrote. 26 sent. 27 did *or* made. 28 fled. 29 hated. 30 joined. 31 read. 32 ——— 33 cursed. 34 lied. 35 put. 36 ground. 37 died. 38 moved. 39 was born. 40 offered. 41 opened. 42 ——— 43 painted. 44 pleased. 45 was able *or* could. 46 provided. 47 took. 48 foretold. 49 prevailed. 50 foresaw. 51 reduced. 52 resolved. 53 laughed. 54 broke. 55 knew. 56 served. 57 followed. 58 ——— 59 conquered. 60 was worth. 61 came, camest, came, came, came, came, or did come, etc. 62 clothed *or* clad. 63 lived. 64 saw. 65 was willing *or* would. 66 eat. 67 went forward. 68 concealed. 69 lod. 70 called. 71 threw. 72 tried.

Indicative Mood, Future Tense.

1 (1) shall have, (thou) wilt have, (he) will have, (we) shall have, (you) will have, (they) will have. 2 shall be. 3 shall give. 4 shall punish. 5 shall owe. 6 shall receive. 7 shall sell. 8 shall acquire. 9 shall go. 10 shall assail. 11 shall beat. 12 shall boil. 13 shall drink. 14 shall conclude. 15 shall pickle. 16 shall know. 17 shall sew. 18 shall run. 19 shall fear. 20 shall believe. 21 shall grow. 22 shall gather. 23 shall say. 24 shall sleep. 25 shall write.

Prétérit Défini, ou Passé Défini.

Terminations in the first conjugation, *ai, as, a, âmes, âtes, èrent.* In the other conjugations, *s, s, t, mes, tes, rent.*

1 Eus	eus	eut	eûmes	eûtes	eurent.
2 fus	fus	fut	fûmes	fûtes	furent.
3 donnai	donnas	donna	donnâmes	donnâtes	donnèrent
4 punis	punis	punit	punîmes	punîtes	punirent
5 dus	dus	dut	dûmes	dûtes	durent
6 reçus	reçus	reçut	reçûmes	reçûtes	reçurent
7 vendis	vendis	vendit	vendîmes	vendîtes	vendirent

N. B. The *first* person *singular* of the following verbs is given; from this the other persons are formed by dropping the termination of the first person and adding the other terminations, as given above.

This remark applies to the other tenses also.

8 Acquis. 9 allai. 10 assaillis. 11 battis. 12 bouillis. 13 bus. 14 conclus. 15 confis. 16 connus. 17 cousis. 18 courus. 19 craignis. 20 crus. 21 crûs. 22 cueillis. 23 dis. 24 dormis. 25 écrivis. 26 envoyai. 27 fis. 28 fuis. 29 haïs. 30 joignis. 31 lus. 32 *wanting.* 33 maudis. 34 mentis. 35 mis. 36 moulus. 37 mourus. 38 mus. 39 naquis. 40 offris. 41 ouvris. 42 *wanting.* 43 peignis. 44 plus. 45 pus. 46 pourvus. 47 pris. 48 prédis. 49 prévalus. 50 prévis. 51 réduisis. 52 résolus 53 ris. 54 rompis. 55 sus. 56 servis. 57 suivis. 58 *wanting.* 59 vainquis. 60 valus. 61 (*model for verbs ending in enir,*) *vins, vins, vint, vînmes, vîntes, vinrent.* 62 vêtis. 63 vêcus. 64 vis. 65 voulus. 66 mangeai. 67 avançai. 68 célai. 69 menai. 70 appelai. 71 jetai. 72 essayai.

Futur Absolu.

Terminations, *rai, ras, ra, rons, rez, ront.*

1 *Aurai, auras, aura, aurons, aurez, auront.* 2 *serai.* 3 donnerai. 4 punirai. 5 devrai. 6 recevrai. 7 vendrai. 8 *acquerrai.* 9 *irai.* 10 assaillirai. 11 battrai. 12 bouillirai. 13 boirai. 14 conclurai. 15 confirai. 16 connaîtrai. 17 coudrai. 18 *courrai.* 19 craindrai. 20 croirai. 21 croîtrai 22 *cueillerai.* 23 dirai. 24 dormirai. 25 écrirai.

26 shall send 27 shall do *or* make. 28 shall flee. 29 shall hate. 30 shall join. 31 shall read. 32 shall shine. 33 shall curse. 34 shall lie. 35 shall put. 36 shall grind. 37 shall die. 38 shall move. 39 shall be born. 40 shall offer. 41 shall open. 42 shall graze. 43 shall paint. 44 shall please. 45 shall be able. 46 shall provide. 47 shall take. 48 shall foretell. 49 shall prevail. 50 shall foresee. 51 shall reduce. 52 shall resolve. 53 shall laugh. 54 shall break. 55 shall know. 56 shall serve. 57 shall follow. 58 shall milk. 59 shall conquer. 60 shall be worth. 61 shall come. 62 shall clothe. 63 shall live. 64 shall see. 65 shall be willing. 66 shall eat. 67 shall go forward. 68 shall conceal. 69 shall lead. 70 shall call. 71 shall throw. 72 shall try.

Conditional Mood, Present Tense.

1 (I) would have, *or* (I) should have, *or* (I) could have, *or* (I) might have, (thou) wouldst have, &c. 2 would be. 3 would give. 4 would punish. 5 would owe. 6 would receive. 7 would sell. 8 would acquire. 9 would go. 10 would assail. 11 would beat. 12 would boil. 13 would drink. 14 would conclude. 15 would pickle. 16 would know. 17 would sew. 18 would run. 19 would fear. 20 would believe. 21 would grow. 22 would gather. 23 would say. 24 would sleep. 25 would write. 26 would send. 27 would do *or* make. 28 would flee. 29 would hate. 30 would join. 31 would read. 32 would shine. 33 would curse. 34 would lie. 35 would put. 36 would grind. 37 would die. 38 would move. 39 would be born. 40 would offer 41 would open. 42 would graze. 43 would paint. 44 would please. 45 would be able. 46 would provide. 47 would take. 48 would foretell. 49 would prevail. 50 would foresee. 51 would reduce. 52 would resolve. 53 would laugh. 54 would break. 55 would know. 56 would serve. 57 would follow. 58 would milk. 59 would conquer. 60 would be worth. 61 would come. 62 would clothe. 63 would live. 64 would see. 65 would be willing. 66 would eat. 67 would go forward. 68 would conceal. 69 would lead. 70 would call. 71 would throw. 72 would try.

26 *enverrai.* 27 *ferai.* 28 fuirai. 29 haïrai. 30 joindrai. 31 lirai. 32 luirai. 33 maudirai. 34 mentirai. 35 mettrai. 36 moudrai. 37 *mourrai.* 38 mouvrai. 39 naîtrai. 40 offrirai. 41 ouvrirai. 42 paîtrai. 43 peindrai. 44 plairai. 45 *pourrai.* 46 pourvoirai. 47 prendrai. 48 prédirai. 49 *prévaudrai.* 50 prévoirai. 51 réduirai. 52 résoudrai. 53 rirai. 54 romprai. 55 *saurai.* 56 servirai. 57 suivrai. 58 trairai. 59 vaincrai. 60 *vaudrai.* 61 *viendrai.* 62 vêtirai. 63 vivrai. 64 *verrai.* 65 *voudrai.* 66 mangerai. 67 avancerai. 68 cèlerai. 69 mènerai. 70 appellerai. 71 jetterai. 72 essaierai.

The future tenses in italics are not formed regularly.

Conditionnel Présent.

Terminations, *rais, rais, rait, rions, riez, raient.*

1 *Aurais, aurais, aurait, aurions, auriez, auraient.* 2 *serais.* 3 donnerais. 4 punirais. 5 devrais. 6 recevrais. 7 vendrais. 8 *acquerrais.* 9 *irais.* 10 assaillirais. 11 battrais. 12 bouillirais. 13 boirais. 14 conclurais. 15 confirais. 16 connaîtrais. 17 coudrais. 18 *courrais.* 19 craindrais. 20 croirais. 21 croîtrais. 22 *cueillerais.* 23 dirais. 24 dormirais. 25 écrirais. 26 *enverrais.* 27 *ferais.* 28 fuirais. 29 haïrais. 30 joindrais. 31 lirais. 32 luirais. 33 maudirais. 34 mentirais. 35 mettrais. 36 moudrais. 37 *mourrais.* 38 mouvrais. 39 naîtrais. 40 offrirais. 41 ouvrirais. 42 paîtrais. 43 peindrais. 44 plairais. 45 *pourrais.* 46 pourvoirais. 47 prendrais. 48 prédirais. 49 *prévaudrais.* 50 prévoirais. 51 réduirais. 52 résoudrais. 53 rirais. 54 romprais. 55 *saurais.* 56 servirais. 57 suivrais. 58 trairais. 59 vaincrais. 60 *vaudrais.* 61 *viendrais.* 62 vêtirais. 63 vivrais. 64 *verrais.* 65 *voudrais.* 66 mangerais. 67 avancerais. 68 cèlerais. 69 mènerais. 70 appellerais. 71 jetterais. 72 essaierais.

The tenses in italics are not formed regularly.

Imperative Mood, Present Tense.

The imperative mood has only three persons, viz., the second person singular, and the first and second persons plural.

1 Have (thou) *or* do thou have, let us have, have ye *or* you, *or* do have. 2 be thou, &c. 3 give thou, &c. 4 punish thou, &c. 5 owe thou, &c. 6 receive thou, &c. 7 sell thou, &c. 8 acquire thou, &c 9 go thou, &c. 10 assail thou, &c. 11 beat thou, &c. 12 boil thou, &c. 13 drink thou, &c. 14 conclude thou, &c. 15 pickle thou, &c. 16 know thou, &c. 17 sew thou, &c. 18 run thou, &c. 19 fear thou, &c. 20 believe thou, &c.

21 grow thou, &c.	22 gather thou, &c.
23 say thou, &c.	24 sleep thou, &c.
25 write thou, &c.	26 send thou, &c.
27 do thou *or* make thou, &c.	28 flee thou, &c.
29 hate thou, &c.	30 join thou, &c.
31 read thou, &c.	32 shine thou, &c.
33 curse thou, &c.	34 lie thou, &c.
35 put thou, &c.	36 grind thou, &c.
37 die thou, &c.	38 move thou, &c.
39 be thou born, &c.	40 offer thou, &c.
41 open thou, &c.	42 graze thou, &c.
43 paint thou, &c.	44 please thou, &c.
45 ————	46 provide thou, &c.
47 take thou, &c.	48 foretell thou, &c.
49 prevail thou, &c	50 foresee thou, &c.
51 reduce thou, &c.	52 resolve thou, &c.
53 laugh thou, &c.	54 break thou, &c.
55 know thou, &c.	56 serve thou, &c.
57 follow thou, &c.	58 milk thou, &c.
59 conquer thou, &c.	60 be thou worth, &c.
61 come thou, &c.	62 clothe thou, &c.
63 live thou, &c.	64 see thou, &c.

65 be thou willing, let us be willing, be ye willing, *or* be so good.

66 eat thou, &c.	67 go thou forward, &c.
68 conceal thou, &c.	69 lead thou, &c.
70 call thou, &c.	71 throw thou, &c.
72 try thou, &c.	

Impératif Présent.

1 (2*d. per. sing.*) Aie, (1*st. per. plur.*) ayons, (2*d. per. plur.*) ayez. 2 sois, soyons, soyez. 3 donne, donnons, donnez. 4 punis, punissons, punissez. 5 dois, devons, devez. 6 reçois, recevons, recevez. 7 vends, vendons, vendez. 8 acquiers, acquérons, acquérez. 9 va, allons, allez. 10 assaille, assaillons, assaillez. 11 bats, battons, battez. 12 bous, bouillons, bouillez. 13 bois, buvons, buvez. 14 conclus, concluons, concluez. 15 confis, confisons, confisez. 16 connais, connaissons, connaissez. 17 couds, cousons, cousez. 18 cours, courons, courez. 19 crains, craignons, craignez. 20 crois, croyons, croyez. 21 croîs, croissons, croissez. 22 cueille, cueillons, cueillez. 23 dis, disons, dites. 24 dors, dormons, dormez. 25 écris, écrivons, écrivez. 26 envoie, envoyons, envoyez. 27 fais, faisons, faites. 28 fuis, fuyons, fuyez. 29 hais, haïssons, haïssez. 30 joins, joignons, joignez. 31 lis, lisons, lisez. 32 luis, luisons, luisez. 33 maudis, maudissons, maudissez. 34 mens, mentons, mentez. 35 mets, mettons, mettez. 36 mouds, moulons, moulez. 37 meurs, mourons, mourez. 38 meus, mouvons, mouvez. 39 nais, naissons, naissez. 40 offre, offrons, offrez. 41 ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez. 42 pais, paissons, paissez. 43 peins, peignons, peignez. 44 plais, plaisons, plaisez. 45 *wanting.* 46 pourvois, pourvoyons, pourvoyez. 47 prends, prenons, prenez. 48 prédis, prédisons, prédisez. 49 prévaux, prévalons, prévalez. 50 prévois, prévoyons, prévoyez. 51 réduis, réduisons, réduisez. 52 résous, résolvons, résolvez. 53 ris, rions, riez. 54 romps, rompons, rompez. 55 sache, sachons, sachez. 56 sers, servons, servez. 57 suis, suivons, suivez. 58 trais, trayons, trayez. 59 vaincs, vainquons, vainquez. 60 vaux, valons, valez. 61 viens, venons, venez. 62 vêts, vêtons, vêtez. 63 vis, vivons, vivez. 64 vois, voyons, voyez. 65 veux, voulons, voulez, *or* veuillez. 66 mange, mangeons, mangez. 67 avance, avançons, avancez. 68 cèle, célons, célez. 69 mène, menons, menez. 70 appelle, appelons, appelez. 71 jette, jetons, jetez. 72 essaie, essayons, essayez.

Subjunctive Mood, Present Tense.

1 That I may have, that thou mayst have, that he may have, that we may have, that you may have, that they may have.

2 That I may be, &c.
3 That I may give, &c.
4 That I may punish, &c.
5 That I may owe, &c.
6 That I may receive, &c.
7 That I may sell, &c.
8 That I may acquire, &c
9 That I may go, &c.
10 That I may assail, &c.
11 That I may beat, &c.
12 That I may boil, &c.
13 That I may drink, &c.
14 That I may conclude, &c.
15 That I may pickle, &c.
16 That I may know, &c.
17 That I may sew, &c.
18 That I may run, &c.
19 That I may fear, &c.
20 That I may believe, &c.
21 That I may grow, &c.
22 That I may gather, &c.
23 That I may say, &c.
24 That I may sleep, &c.
25 That I may write, &c.
26 That I may send, &c.
27 That I may do *or* make, &c
28 That I may flee, &c.
29 That I may hate, &c.
30 That I may join, &c.
31 That I may read, &c.
32 That I may shine, &c.
33 That I may curse, &c
34 That I may lie, &c.
35 That I may put, &c

Subjonctif Présent ou Futur.

Terminations, *e, es, e, ions, iez, ent,* except in Avoir and Etre.

1 Que j' aie, que tu aies, qu' il ait, que nous ayons, que vous ayez, qu' ils aient.

N. B. In the following verbs the conjunction *que*, and the pronouns *je* or *j'*, *tu, il, nous, vous, ils,* are omitted for the sake of brevity; but, in writing or reciting the verbs, the pupil must supply them as in the preceding model, *Que j'aie, &c.*

2 Sois, sois, soit, soyons, soyez, soient. 3 donne, donnes, donne, donnions, donniez, donnent. 4 punisse, punisses, punisse, punissions, punissiez, punissent. 5 doive, doives, doive, devions, deviez, doivent. 6 reçoive, reçoives, reçoive, recevions, receviez, reçoivent. 7 vende, vendes, vende, vendions, vendiez, vendent. 8 acquière, acquières, acquière, acquérions, acquériez, acquièrent. 9 aille, ailles, aille, allions, alliez, aillent. 10 assaille. assailles, assaille, assaillions, assailliez, assaillent. 11 batte, battes, batte, battions, battiez, battent. 12 bouille, bouilles, bouille, bouillions, bouilliez, bouillent. 13 boive, boives, boive, buvions, buviez, boivent. 14 conclue, conclues, conclue, concluïons, concluïez, concluent. 15 confise, confises, confise, confisions, confisiez, confisent. 16 connaisse, connaisses, connaisse, connaissions, connaissiez, connaissent. 17 couse, couses, couse, cousions, cousiez, cousent. 18 coure, coures, coure, courions, couriez, courent. 19 craigne, craignes, craigne, craignions, craigniez, craignent. 20 croie, croies, croie, croyions, croyiez, croient 21 croisse, croisses, croisse, croissions, croissiez, croissent. 22 cueille, cueilles, cueille, cueillions, cueilliez, cueillent. 23 dise, dises, dise, disions, disiez, disent. 24 dorme, dormes, dorme, dormions, dormiez, dorment. 25 écrive, écrives, écrive, écrivions, écriviez, écrivent. 26 envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyions, envoyiez, envoient. 27 fasse, fasses, fasse, fassions, fassiez, fassent. 28 fuie, fuies, fuie, fuyions, fuyiez, fuient. 29 haïsse, haïsses, haïsse, haïssions, haïssiez, haïssent. 30 joigne, joignes, joigne, joignions, joigniez, joignent. 31 lise, lises, lise, lisions, lisiez, lisent. 32 luise, luises, luise, luisions, luisiez, luisent. 33 maudisse, maudisses, maudisse, maudissions, maudissiez, maudissent. 34 mente, mentes, mente, mentions, mentiez, mentent. 35 mette mettes, mette, mettions, mettiez, mettent.

36 That I may grind, &c.
37 That I may die, &c.
38 That I may move, &c.
39 That I may be born, &c.
40 That I may offer, &c.
41 That I may open, &c.
42 That I may graze, &c.
43 That I may paint, &c.
44 That I may please, &c.
45 That I may be able, &c.
46 That I may provide, &c.
47 That I may take, &c.
48 That I may foretell, &c.
49 That I may prevail, &c.
50 That I may foresee, &c.
51 That I may reduce, &c.
52 That I may resolve, &c.
53 That I may laugh, &c.
54 That I may break, &c.
55 That I may know, &c.
56 That I may serve, &c.
57 That I may follow, &c.
58 That I may milk, &c.
59 That I may conquer, &c.
60 That I may be worth, &c.
61 That I may come, &c.
62 That I may clothe, &c.
63 That I may live, &c.
64 That I may see, &c.
65 That I may be willing, &c.
66 That I may eat, &c.
67 That I may go forward, &c.
68 That I may conceal, &c.
69 That I may lead, &c.
70 That I may call, &c.
71 That I may throw, &o
72 That I may try, &c.

36 moule, moules, moule, moulions, mouliez, moulent. 37 meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent. 38 meuve, meuves, meuve, mouvions, mouviez, meuvent. 39 naisse, naisses, naisse, naissions, naissiez, naissent. 40 offre, offres, offre, offrions, offriez, offrent. 41 ouvre, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrions, ouvriez, ouvrent. 42 paisse, paisses, paisse, paissions, paissiez, paissent. 43 peigne, peignes, peigne, peignions, peigniez, peignent. 44 plaise, plaises, plaise, plaisions, plaisiez, plaisent. 45 puisse, puisses, puisse, puissions, puissiez, puissent. 46 pourvoie, pourvoies, pourvoie, pourvoyions, pourvoyiez, pourvoient. 47 prenne, prennes, prenne, prenions, preniez, prennent. 48 prédise, prédises, prédise, prédisions, prédisiez, prédisent. 49 prévale, prévales, prévale, prévalions, prévaliez, prévalent. 50 prévoie, prévoies, prévoie, prévoyions, prévoyiez, prévoient. 51 réduise, réduises, réduise, réduisions, réduisiez, réduisent. 52 résolve, résolves, résolve, résolvions, résolviez, résolvent. 53 rie, ries, rie, riions, riiez, rient. 54 rompe, rompes, rompe, rompions, rompiez, rompent. 55 sache, saches, sache, sachions, sachiez, sachent. 56 serve, serves, serve, servions, serviez, servent. 57 suive, suives, suive, suivions, suiviez, suivent. 58 traie, traies, traie, trayions, trayiez, traient. 59 vainque, vainques, vainque, vainquions, vainquiez, vainquent. 60 vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, vaillent. 61 vienne, viennes, vienne, venions, veniez, viennent. 62 vête, vêtes, vête, vêtions, vêtiez, vêtent. 63 vive, vives, vive, vivions, viviez, vivent. 64 voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient. 65 veuille, veuilles, veuille, voulions, vouliez, veuillent. 66 mange, manges, mange, mangions, mangiez, mangent. 67 avance, avances, avance, avancions, avanciez, avancent. 68 cèle, cèles, cèle, célions, céliez, cèlent. 69 mène, mènes, mène, menions, meniez, mènent. 70 appelle, appelles, appelle, appelions, appeliez, appellent. 71 jette, jettes, jette, jetions, jetiez, jettent. 72 essaie, essaies, essaie, essayions, essayiez, essaient.

Subjunctive Mood, Imperfect or Past Tense.

1 That I might have, that thou mightst have, that he might have, that we might have, that you might have, that they might have.

2 That I might be, &c.
3 That I might give, &c.
4 That I might punish, &c.
5 That I might owe, &c.
6 That I might receive, &c.
7 That I might sell, &c.
8 That I might acquire, &c.
9 That I might go, &c.
10 That I might assail, &c.
11 That I might beat, &c.
12 That I might boil, &c.
13 That I might drink, &c.
14 That I might conclude, &c.
15 That I might pickle, &c.
16 That I might know, &c.
17 That I might sew, &c.
18 That I might run, &c.
19 That I might fear, &c.
20 That I might believe, &c.
21 That I might grow, &c.
22 That I might gather, &c.
23 That I might say, &c.
24 That I might sleep, &c.
25 That I might write, &c.
26 That I might send, &c.
27 That I might do *or* make &c.
28 That I might flee, &c.
29 That I might hate, &c.

Imparfait du Subjonctif.

Terminations, *sse, sses, t* (silent,) *ssions, ssiez, ssent.*

1 Que j'eusse, que tu eusses, qu'il eût, que nous eussions, que vous eussiez, qu'ils eussent.

N. B. In the following verbs the conjunction and the pronouns are omitted, for the sake of brevity, but in writing or reciting the verbs, the pupil must supply them, as in the preceding model: *Que j'eusse,* &c.

2 Fusse, fusses, fût, fussions, fussiez, fussent. 3 donnasse, donnasses, donnât, donnassions, donnassiez, donnassent. 4 punisse, punisses, punît, punissions, punissiez, punissent. 5 dusse, dusses, dût, dussions, dussiez, dussent. 6 reçusse, reçusses, reçût, reçussions, reçussiez, reçussent. 7 vendisse, vendisses, vendît, vendissions, vendissiez, vendissent. 8 acquisse, acquisses, acquît, acquissions, acquissiez, acquissent. 9 allasse, allasses, allât, allassions, allassiez, allassent. 10 assaillisse, assaillisses, assaillît, assaillissions, assaillissiez, assaillissent. 11 battisse, battisses, battît, battissions, battissiez, battissent. 12 bouillisse, bouillisses, bouillît, bouillissions, bouillissiez, bouillissent. 13 busse, busses, bût, bussions, bussiez, bussent. 14 conclusse, conclusses, conclût, conclussions, conclussiez, conclussent. 15 confisse, confisses, confît, confissions, confissiez, confissent. 16 connusse, connusses, connût, connussions, connussiez, connussent. 17 cousisse, cousisses, cousît, cousissions, cousissiez, cousissent. 18 courusse, courusses, courût, courussions, courussiez, courussent. 19 craignisse, craignisses, craignît, craignissions, craignissiez, craignissent. 20 crusse, crusses, crût, crussions, crussiez, crussent. 21 crûsse, crûsses, crût, crûssions, crûssiez, crûssent. 22 cueillisse, cueillisses, cueillît, cueillissions, cueillissiez, cueillissent. 23 disse, disses, dît, dissions, dissiez, dissent. 24 dormisse, dormisses, dormît, dormissions, dormissiez, dormissent. 25 écrivisse, écrivisses, écrivît, écrivissions, écrivissiez, écrivissent. 26 envoyasse, envoyasses, envoyât, envoyassions, envoyassiez, envoyassent. 27 fisse, fisses, fît, fissions, fissiez, fissent. 28 fuisse, fuisses, fuît, fuissions, fuissiez, fuissent. 29 haïsse, haïsses, haït, haïssions, haïssiez, haïssent.

30 That I might join, &c.
31 That I might read, &c.
32 *Wanting.*
33 That I might curse, &c.
34 That I might lie, &c.
35 That I might put, &c.
36 That I might grind, &c.
37 That I might die, &c.
38 That I might move, &c.
39 That I might be born, &c.
40 That I might offer, &c.
41 That I might open, &c.
42 *Wanting,*
43 That I might paint, &c.
44 That I might please, &c.
45 That I might be able, &c.
46 That I might provide, &c.
47 That I might take, &c.
48 That I might foretell, &c.
49 That I might prevail, &c.
50 That I might foresee, &c.
51 That I might reduce, &c.
52 That I might resolve, &c.
53 That I might laugh, &c.
54 That I might break, &c.
55 That I might know, &c.
56 That I might serve, &c.
57 That I might follow, &c.
58 *Wanting.*
59 That I might conquer, &c.
60 That I might be worth, &c.
61 That I might come, &c.
62 That I might clothe, &c.

30 joignisse, joignisses, joignît, joignissions, joignissiez, joignissent. 31 lusse, lusses, lût, lussions, lussiez, lussent. 32 *wanting*. 23 maudisse, maudisses, maudît, maudissions, maudissiez, maudissent. 34 mentisse, mentisses, mentît, mentissions, mentissiez, mentissent. 35 misse, misses, mît, missions, missiez, missent. 36 moulusse, moulusses, moulût, moulussions, moulussiez, moulussent. 37 mourusse, mourusses, mourût, mourussions, mourussiez, mourussent. 38 musse, musses, mût, mussions, mussiez, mussent. 39 naquisse, naquisses, naquît, naquissions, naquissiez, naquissent. 40 offrisse, offrisses, offrît, offrissions, offrissiez, offrissent. 41 ouvrisse, ouvrisses, ouvrît, ouvrissions, ouvrissiez, ouvrissent. 42 *wanting*. 43 peignisse, peignisses, peignît, peignissions, peignissiez, peignissent. 44 plusse, plusses, plût, plussions, plussiez, plussent. 45 pusse, pusses, pût, pussions, pussiez, pussent. 46 pourvusse, pourvusses, pourvût, pourvussions, pourvussiez, pourvussent. 47 prisse, prisses, prît, prissions, prissiez, prissent. 48 prédisse, prédisses, prédît, prédissions, prédissiez. prédissent. 49 prévalusse, prévalusses, prévalût, prévalussions, prévalussiez, prévalussent. 50 prévisse, prévisses, prévît, prévissions, prévissiez, prévissent. 51 réduisisse, réduisisses, réduisît, réduisissions, réduisissiez, réduisissent. 52 résolusse, résolusses, résolût, résolussions, résolussiez, résolussent. 53 risse, risses, rît, rissions, rissiez, rissent. 54 rompisse, rompisses, rompît, rompissions, rompissiez, rompissent. 55 susse, susses, sût, sussions, sussiez, sussent. 56 servisse, servisses, servît, servissions, servissiez, servissent. 57 suivisse, suivisses, suivît, suivissions, suivissiez, suivissent. 58 *wanting*. 59 vainquisse, vainquisses, vainquît, vainquissions, vainquissiez, vainquissent. 60 valusse, valusses, valût, valussions, valussiez, valussent. 61 vinsse, vinsses, vînt, vinssions, vinssiez, vinssent. 62 vêtisse, vêtisses, vêtît, vêtissions, vêtissiez, vêtissent.

63 That I might live, &c.
64 That I might see, &c.
65 That I might be willing, &c.
66 That I might eat, &c.
67 That I might go forward, &c.
68 That I might conceal, &c.
69 That I might lead, &c.
70 That I might call, &c.
71 That I might throw, &c.
72 That I might try, &c.

The Defective Verb *to fail.*

Inf. pres.	To fail.	Pres. part. failing.	Past part. failed.
Ind. pret.	I failed,	thou failedst,	he failed.
	We failed,	you failed,	they failed

To blow, to open, (as a flower.)

Inf. pres.	To blow.	Past part. blown.
Ind. pres.	It blows,	they blow.
" pret.	It will blow,	they will blow.
Cond.	It would blow,	they would blow.
Sub. pres.	That it may blow,	that they may blow.

To Fry.

Inf. pres.	To fry.	Past part.	fried.
Ind. pres.	I fry,	thou friest,	he fries.
" fut.	I shall fry,	thou wilt fry,	he will fry.
	We shall fry,	you will fry,	they will fry.
Cond. pres.	I would fry,	thou wouldst fry,	he would fry.
	We would fry,	you would fry,	they would fry
Imperative,	Fry thou.		

63 vécusse, vécusses, vécût, vécussions, vécussiez, vécussent. 64 visse, visses, vît, vissions, vissiez, vissent. 65 voulusse, voulusses, voulût, voulussions, voulussiez, voulussent. 66 mangeasse, mangeasses, mangeât, mangeassions, mangeassiez, mangeassent. 67 avançasse, avançasses, avançat, avançassions, avançassiez, avançassent. 68 célasse, célasses, célât, célassions, célassiez, célassent. 69 menasse, menasses, menât, menassions, menassiez, menassent. 70 appelasse, appelasses, appelât, appelassions, appelassiez, appelassent. 71 jetasse, jetasses, jetât, jetassions, jetassiez, jetassent. 72 essayasse, essayasses, essayât, essayassions, essayassiez, essayassent.

Faillir.

Faillir.	faillant,	failli.
Je faillis,	tu faillis,	il faillit.
Nous faillîmes,	vous faillîtes,	ils faillirent.

Eclore.

Eclore.	Eclos.
Il éclot,	ils éclosent.
Il éclora,	ils écloront.
Il éclorait,	ils écloraient.
Qu'il éclose,	qu'ils éclosent.

Frire.

Frire.		Frit.
Je fris,	tu fris,	il frit.
Je frirai,	tu friras,	il frira.
Nous frirons,	vous frirez,	ils friront.
Je frirais,	tu frirais,	il frirait.
Nous fririons,	vous fririez,	ils friraient.
Fris.		

This verb, (*defective*) is only used in the above few persons and tenses and in all the compound tenses, which are formed with Avoir.

To supply the persons and tenses which are wanting, we use the different tenses of Faire, *to make*, with the infinitive present of Frire; as *nous faisons frire, vous faites frire, ils font frire*, &c.

EASY NARRATIVES.

N. B. There is so much difference between the idioms of the English and French languages, that it is almost impossible for *beginners* to make really good translations into French. A few *literal* translations from the French are therefore added, to be re-translated into that language. Grammatical accuracy, merely, will be necessary to make them good French. The pupil will be obliged to use a French Dictionary in translating the following anecdotes and narratives.

A poor man, who was a porter at Milan, found a bag in which there were two hundred crowns. He who had lost it, informed by a public advertisement, came to the boarding house where the porter worked, and having given good proofs that the bag belonged to him, the porter returned it to him. Full of joy and gratitude, he offered to his benefactor twenty crowns, which the latter absolutely[1] refused. He came down[2] then to ten, then to five. But finding him always inexorable, "I have lost nothing," said he, in a tone of anger, throwing down[3] his bag; "I have lost nothing, if you will not receive anything." The porter accepted five crowns, which he immediately[1] gave to the poor.

[1]See remark on Adverbs, page 106. [2]*Came down* from *se réduire*. [3]Down, *par terre*.

One day when (*que*) the dauphin, the father of Louis the Sixteenth, was hunting with the king in the environs of Compiègne, his coachman wished to cross a piece of ground, where the harvest had not been got in.[1] Having perceived it, he called[2] to him to go back[3] into the road. The coachman remarked to him that he would not arrive in (*à*) time at the place of meeting.[4] "Be it so," replied the prince; "I would rather[5] miss ten appointments[4] than occasion injury to the field of a poor countryman."

[1]Where the harvest, &c., write, of which the crop was not yet harvested (*levée.*) [2]*Called* from *crier*. [3]Go back, *rentrer*. [4]*Rendez-vous*. [5]*Would rather*, from *aimer mieux*.

Alphonso, king of Aragon, was riding one day on horseback. A page, who was walking before him, wounded him through heedlessness, by pulling the branch of a tree, which struck him in (*à*) the eye, and made the blood gush out. This accident at first[1] frightened all the lords of his suite, who instantly[1] hastened, and drew near[2] him. The king, notwithstanding the pain that he felt, cheered them, and then[1] said to them quietly[3]: "What gives me the most concern,[4] is the sorrow of this poor page, who is the cause of my wound."

[1]See remark on Adverbs, page 106. [2]*Drew near*, from *s'approcher de* [3]With a tranquil air. [4]*peine.*

A wounded soldier having been forgotten on the field of battle, one only friend, his companion, his dog, had remained near[1] him. Inconsolable, without food, he had passed two days over his master's body, resolved not to survive him (*lui.*) Suddenly he perceived (*comp. pres.*) some slight movement. The eye of his cherished master opened again[2] to the light. He breathes! He still lives! The generous animal covers him with (*de*) caresses; he licks his wounds, he warms his icy-cold[3] limbs. The soldier lifts himself up[4], but, exhausted by his long agony, he falls back powerless[5]; he will die of weakness. Where can he look for any assistance? Where find succour? On all sides silence and death! But what (*que*) can not instinct directed by love accomplish? With an eager scent[6], the dog questions space, and bounding with (*de*) joy, he sets off like an arrow, returns still more quickly, and brings to his fainting master the half of a loaf which he has discovered in the midst of the dead bodies[7].

[1]*auprès de.* [2]opened again, comp. pres. of *se rouvrir.* [3]*glacés.* [4]to lift up one's self, *se soulever.* [5]*sans force.* [6]*nez.* [7]dead bodies, *cadavres.*

The reply which the famous Cornelia, mother of the Gracchi[1], made to a lady of Campania[2], is very celebrated. This lady, who was very rich, and still more haughty, after having[3] displayed before the eyes of Cornelia, in a visit that she made[4] to her, her diamonds, pearls, and most precious jewels, begged her earnestly[5] to show her hers also. Cornelia dexterously turned[6] the conversation upon an other subject[7] until the return of her sons, who had gone to the public schools. When they returned[8], and[9] entered into their mother's room: "Behold," said she to the lady of Campania, showing them to her, "behold my jewels and my ornaments."

[1] *Gracques.* [2] of Campania, *Campanienne.* [3] Infin. mood. [4] from *rendre.* [5] *avec instance.* [6] *fit tomber.* [7] *matière*, f. [8] Comp. Pret. [9] After *and*, supply *that they.*

THE TULIP AND THE ROSE.

A tulip and a rose were neighbors in the same garden. They were both exceedingly beautiful; yet the gardener paid[1] most care and most attention to[1] the rose. The tulip, vain of her exterior charms, and not being able to bear the thought of being abandoned for another, reproached[2] the gardener with his partiality. "Why is my beauty thus neglected?" she asked him. "Are not my colors more brilliant, more variegated, and more attractive,[3] than those of the rose? Why then do you prefer her to me, and bestow[4] on her all your affection?" "Do not be discontented, beautiful tulip," answered the gardener; "I know your beauties, and I admire them as they deserve (it,) but there are in my favorite rose odors and internal charms, which beauty alone cannot afford[5] me."

External beauty strikes at first sight[6], but we should prefer internal merit.

[1] paid . . . to, from *avoir . . . pour.* [2] reproached to the gardener his &c. [3] *engageantes.* [4] from *donner.* [5] *procurer.* [6] at first sight, *d'abord*

MAHMOUD, KHAN OF TARTARY.

A poor woman complained to Mahmoud, Khan of Tartary[1], who conquered Persia in the tenth century, against (*de*) a person who had murdered her only son in the province of Yrac, in Persia. "How would you have one do[2] justice at such a distance?" said Mahmoud: "Why did you conquer countries, which you cannot govern at such a distance?" replied the unfortunate mother.

[1] Khan of Tartary, *Kan des Tartares.* [2] How would you have one do? *Comment voulez-vous qu'on fasse?*

LA FONTAINE.

Of[1] the works of this author nothing can be recommended except[2] his fables. In these[3] he has surpassed every other writer, and the name of the Inimitable La Fontaine has been given him by common consent.[4] His fables are perfectly natural, without the least affectation, and replete with[5] wit. He was a man of extreme simplicity of manners; full of candor and probity; but in society always absent[6] and thoughtful, so much so[7], that he often spoke to his friends without knowing them.

[1] of, *parmi.* [2] Write, one can recommend only. [3] Write, it is there that. [4] by common consent, *d'un commun accord.* [5] replete with, *pleines de.* [6] Write, he had always the mind absent. [7] so much so, *à tel point.*

SWISS ANECDOTE.

An inhabitant of the canton of Schwitz came one day to (*vers*) his neighbor Gaspard, who was working in a meadow, and said to him: "My friend, thou knowest that we are at variance about[1] this piece of ground: I have applied to the judge, because neither of us is sufficiently learned[2] to know which of us is right;[3] therefore, we must both appear before him to-morrow." "Frantz," answered

Gaspard, "thou seest that I have mowed the whole of the meadow; I must get in[4] the hay to-morrow; I cannot go." "What is to be done[5]?" resumed the other, "how can I disappoint[6] the judge, who has fixed upon[7] to-morrow to (*pour*) decide on (*de*) the affair? Besides, I think it necessary to know to whom the ground belongs before[8] gathering (*Inf. Mood*) the crop." They had thus disputed for some time, when Gaspard seized the hand of Frantz, and exclaimed, "I'll tell thee what[9], my friend: go to Schwitz alone, explain to the judge thy reasons and mine; argue on both sides[10]; why should I go thither myself?" "Agreed[11]," said Frantz; "since thou trustest me with the management[12] of this business, depend upon it[13] I shall act for the best."[14]

The affair being thus settled, Frantz set off next day for the town, explained his reasons, and argued pro and con[15] with (*de*) all his might. As soon as the verdict[16] was given[17], he hastened[18] to (*de*) return to his neighbor. "I congratulate thee, friend Gaspard," cried he, as soon as he perceived him, "the meadow is thine[19], and I am glad that this business is[20] finished." From[21] that day, (says the Swiss Chronicle, from which[22] this anecdote is extracted,[23]) the two peasants lived in perfect friendship.

[1] to be at variance about, *avoir un différend pour*. [2] learned, *instruits*. [3] see appendix, page 144. [4] to get in, *ramasser*. [5] Write, what is it necessary to do? [6] disappoint, *manquer de parole à*. [7] fixed upon, *choisi*. [8] before, *avant de*. [9] I'll tell thee what, *Je vais te dire ce qu'il y a*. [10] Write, the two sides. [11] Agreed, *ainsi conclu*. [12] *conduite*, f. [13] Write, be assured. [14] for the best, *de mon mieux*. [15] pro and con, *pour et contre*. [16] *jugement*, m. [17] *prononcé*. [18] hastened, from *se hâter*. [19] is thine, *t'appartient*. [20] See Remark on the subjunctive mood, page 142. [21] *Depuis*. [22] from which, *d'où*. [23] to extract, *tirer*.

THE ACORN AND THE PUMPKIN.

A villager, contemplating the size[1] of the pumpkin and the smallness of its stem,[2] exclaimed: "Of (*à*) what was the Author of Nature thinking[3], when he made[4] that plant? Its stem is so little proportioned to its size, that it cannot support it, and its fruit is obliged to lie on the ground and spoil.[5] That fruit would have been

better placed on this oak: it is a large, strong tree. And again[6], why does not the acorn, which is not bigger than my little finger, grow on a small stem?"

These reflections embarrassed him greatly. In the mean time he lies down[7] at the foot of an oak to take a little nap: but he could not sleep. The wind was strong; it blew down[8] some acorns; one fell[9] on the nose of our critic; the blood gushed out.[10] "Oh! oh!" said he, changing his tune,[11] "I see now that God has made right[12] what he has made. If these acorns had been pumpkins, they would have broken my head[13]." So he returned home, praising God for (*de*) every thing.

[1] *grosseur*, f. [2] Write, how much its stem is small. [3] was thinking, from *songer*. [4] when he made, write, in making. [5] to spoil, *se gâter*. [6] *encore*. [7] to lie down, *se coucher*. [8] to blow down, *abattre*. [9] one fell, *il en tomba un*. [10] to gush out, *sortir*. [11] his tune, *de langage*. [12] *bien*. [13] Write, they would have broken to me the head.

THE YOUNG FLY.

A young fly was with her mother on a chimney wall,[1] quite[2] near a pot, in which[3] soup was boiling.

The old fly who had business elsewhere, said to her daughter on[4] flying away: "Stay where thou art, my child; do not leave thy place until my return." "Why, mamma?" asked the little one. "Because I am afraid that thou wilt go[5] too near that boiling spring." It is the pot that she called by that name.[6] "And why must I not go near[7] it?" "Because thou wouldst fall in,[8] and be drowned in it."[9] "And why would I fall into it?"[10] "I cannot tell thee the reason; but trust to[11] my experience. Every time that a fly has taken it into her head[12] to fly over one of these springs, from which[13] so many vapors rise, I have always seen that she fell in without ever rising from it again." [5]

The mother thought she had said[16] enough, and flew away. But the little one laughing at[17] her advice, said to herself: "Aged people are always too careful. Why wish to deprive me of the inno-

cent pleasure of fluttering a little over this smoking spring? Have I not wings, and am I not prudent enough to avoid accidents? In short, mamma, it is in vain for you to talk,[18] and to allege your experience to me, I will amuse myself in fluttering[19] a little around the spring; and I should like[20] to know what would make me go down[21] into it."[22]

So saying[23] she flies off; but she was scarcely over[24] the pot, when, made giddy[25] by the steam which was rising from it, she fell in.[26] Before expiring,[27] she still had time to utter these words: "Unhappy are the children who do not listen to[28] the advice of their parents!"

[1] the wall of a chimney. [2] quite, *assez*. [3] in which, *où*. [4] on, *en*. [5] wilt go, subj. pres. of *s'approcher*. [6] by that name, *ainsi*. [7] to go near, *s'approcher*. [8] in, *dedans*. [9] be drowned in it, *t'y noyerais*. [10] into it, *y*. [11] trust from, *croire;* to, *en*. [12] to take it into one's head, *s'aviser*. [13] from which, *d'où*. [14] to rise, *s'exhaler*. [15] to rise again, *remonter*. [16] she had said; write, to have said. [17] to laugh at, *se moquer de*. [18] it is in vain for you to talk, *vous avez beau dire*. [19] Write, to flutter. [20] should like, *voudrais bien*. [21] go down, *descendre*. [22] into it, *y*. [23] Write, in saying that. [24] over, *au dessus de*. [25] made giddy, *étourdie*. [26] fell in, *s'y laissa tomber*. [27] *Avant d'expirer*. [28] to listen to, *écouter*.

THE ABENAKI.

During one of the wars in America, a company of Abénakis[1] (a tribe of Indians,) defeated a small body[2] of British[3] troops. The vanquished could not escape from (*à*) enemies more nimble than they in running[4], and eager[5] to pursue them.

A young English officer, chased[6] by two savages, who came up[7] to him with raised battle-axes[8], had no hope of escaping[9] from death. At the same time, an old Indian, armed with (*de*) a bow, approaches him and prepares to pierce him with (*de*) an arrow; but after having taken aim at[10] him, he lowers his bow suddenly, and runs to throw himself between the young officer and the two barbarians, who were going to massacre him. The latter retired with respect.

The old man took the Englishman by the hand, encouraged[11] him

by his caresses, and conducted him to his cabin, where he treated him with a kindness which never varied. (*se démentit.*) He made him (*of him*) less his slave than his companion; he taught him (*to him*) the language of the Abénakis, and the rude arts practised[12] by (*chez*) these people. They lived very happily together[13]. One thing only gave uneasiness to the officer; sometimes the old man used to fix[14] his (*the*) eyes upon him, and after having looked at[15] him he dropped (*let fall*) some tears.

On (*à*) the return of spring, the savages resumed their (*the*) arms, and took the field[16]. The old man, who was still sufficiently robust to bear the fatigues of war, set out with them, accompanied by (*de*) his prisoner. The Abénakis marched more than (*de*) two hundred leagues through (*à travers*) the forests; at last, they arrived at a plain where they discovered a British encampment[17]. The old man showed[18] it to his prisoner, watching (*in observing*) his countenance. "There are thy brothers," said he to him; "there are the enemies who are awaiting us to give us battle. Listen: I have saved thy life[19], I have taught thee to make a canoe, a bow and arrows, to handle the battle-axe, and to surprise the beaver in the forest. What wast thou, when I led thee to (*dans*) my hut? Thy hands were those of a child; they served neither to procure thee food, nor to defend thee. Thou knewest nothing. Thou owest every thing to me. Wilt thou unite thyself to thy brothers, and lift up the hatchet against us?"

The Englishman declared that he would rather (*would like better to*) lose his (*the*) life a thousand times, than shed the blood of his deliverer.

The Abénaki covered[20] his face with both his hands, bending down[21] his (*the*) head; and after having (*Inf. Moōd*) been some time in this attitude, he looked at the young Englishman, and said to him in (*de*) a tone of mingled[22] tenderness and grief: "Hast thou a father?" "My father," said the young man, "was living, when I left[23] my country." "Alas!" cries the Indian, "how (*que*) unhappy he must be![24]" and after a moment of silence, he added: "Dost thou know that I have been a father! I am one (*le*) no longer (*plus.*) I saw[25] my son fall in battle[26];" he was at my side; he was covered with wounds when

he fell[25]. But I have avenged him!" He pronounced these words with vehemence, (*force.*) All his body trembled. He was almost stifled with (*par*) groans, which he would not suffer[26] to escape His eyes were restless[27], his tears did not flow. He became calm[28] by degrees[29], and turning himself towards the east, where the sun was rising, he said to the young officer: "Dost thou see that beautiful sky resplendent with (*de*) light? Hast thou any pleasure in (*à*) looking at it?" "Yes," replied the Englishman, "I have pleasure in looking at that beautiful sky." "I have none," said the Indian, in shedding a torrent of tears. Some moments after, he shows to the young man a magnolia in bloom[30]. "Dost thou see that beautiful tree," said he to him, "and dost thou look at it with pleasure?" "Yes," replied the young man, "I have pleasure in looking at it." "I no longer have any," said the Indian hastily[31]; and immediately he added: "Depart, go back to thy father, that he may still have pleasure in seeing the rising[32] sun, and the flowers of the spring."

[1] *Abénakis.* [2] a small body of troops, *un détachement.* [3] *Anglais.* [4] in running, *à la course.* [5] *acharnés.* [6] *pressé.* [7] to come up to, *aborder.* [8] Write, the axe raised. [9] to escape from, *se dérober à.* [10] to take aim at. *ajuster.* [11] from *rassurer.* [12] practised, *en usage.* [13] Write, much pleased with one another. [14] See Remark on the Imperfect, page 136. [15] to look at, *regarder.* [16] to take the field, *se mettre en campagne.* [17] *camp*, m. [18] to show, *faire voir.* [19] Write, I to thee have saved the life. [20] Write, put the two hands over his face. [21] bending down, *en baissant.* [22] Write, mingled with (*de.*) [23] Comp. Present. [24] Write, how he must be unhappy. [25] *combat*, m. [26] *laisser.* [27] *égarés.* [28] to become calm, *se calmer.* [29] by degrees, *peu à peu.* [30] in bloom, *en fleurs.* [31] *avec précipitation* [32] Write, the sun which rises.

THE END.

MODEL TEXT-BOOKS

FOR

Schools, Academies, and Colleges.

CHASE AND STUART'S CLASSICAL SERIES.

EDITED BY

THOMAS CHASE, A.M., PROFESSOR OF CLASSICAL LITERATURE, *Haverford College, Penna.*

& GEORGE STUART, A.M., PROFESSOR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE, *Central High School, Philada.*

References to

HARKNESS'S LATIN GRAMMAR,

ANDREWS & STODDARD'S LATIN GRAMMAR,

BULLIONS & MORRIS'S LATIN GRAMMAR,

GILDERSLEEVE'S LATIN GRAMMAR,

AND

ALLEN'S MANUAL LATIN GRAMMAR.

THE publication of this edition of the Classics was suggested by the constantly increasing demand by teachers for an edition which, by judicious notes, would give to the student the assistance really necessary to render his study profitable, furnishing explanations of passages difficult of interpretation, of peculiarities of Syntax, &c., and yet would require him to make faithful use of his Grammar and Dictionary.

It is believed that this Classical Series needs only to be known to insure its very general use. The publishers claim for it peculiar merit, and beg leave to call attention to the following important particulars:

The purity of the text.
The clearness and conciseness of the notes, and their adaptation to the wants of students.
The beauty of the type and paper.
The handsome style of binding.
The convenience of the shape and size.
The low price at which the volumes are sold.
The preparation of the whole Series is the original work of American scholars.
The text is not a mere reprint, but is based upon a careful and painstaking comparison of all the most improved editions. with constant reference to the authority of the best manuscripts.
No pains have been spared to make the notes accurate, clear, and helpful to the learner. Points of geography, history, mythology, and antiquities are explained in accordance with the views of the best German scholars.

We desire also to direct the attention of teachers to the advantages to be gained by the use of these books over those which give only "*as much Latin as is necessary to read in order to enter college.*" It is intended that the Series shall comprise *complete* editions of the classical authors usually read in our schools, *and that the combined price of the several preparatory volumes of the Series shall not exceed the price of the incomplete works referred to.* Teachers preparing students for college can thus have the privilege of selecting such portions of the different authors as they may desire the student to read, or as the particular college for which the student is fitting may require, with the advantage to the scholar of possessing the remaining portions of each author to read and refer to as time may permit or inclination dictate. The different authors, moreover, will be bound separately, in neat books, easy and convenient to handle, instead of being bound together in cumbersome volumes. These certainly are advantages which the practical teacher will appreciate.

These books are more largely used in the

Catholic Schools

of the country than any other classical text-books published; and, as it is generally known that these schools make a specialty of the Classics, the fact is a fair evidence of their merit.

The generous welcome given to these books, proves very conclusively that they are well adapted to the wants of the class-room. Already they have been adopted in every State of the Union, and the Publishers have the proud satisfaction of stating that they are at this time the standard text-books in more than

One Thousand Schools.

and the number is daily increasing. Among these are many of the largest and most important classical institutions in the country.

The Publishers desire to acknowledge their indebtedness to the teachers of Latin throughout the country who are using these books, for the high position that has been accorded to them. Grateful for the very flattering welcome they have received, we pledge ourselves that the subsequent volumes shall in all respects equal those already issued, and that the entire Series shall be

In Scholarship	**Inferior to None.**
In Appearance	**The Most Attractive.**
In Binding	**The Most Durable.**
In Price	**The Most Reasonable.**

To those teachers who do not use them we suggest the consideration of two facts:

1. **Large and permanent success follows only real merit.**
2. **Such success has been attained by these books.**

And we are confident that if they will inquire into the merit which has insured this success, they will reach the same conclusion that hundreds of other teachers have arrived at, and find that they are well worthy of the commendation bestowed upon them.

The following books of the Series are now ready. Due notice will be given of the publication of the remaining volumes.

CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES on the Gallic War. With Explanatory Notes, a Vocabulary, Geographical Index, Map of Gaul, Plan of the Bridge, &c. By Prof. GEORGE STUART. Price by mail, postpaid, $1.25.

FIRST SIX BOOKS OF VIRGIL'S ÆNEID, with Explanatory Notes, Vocabulary, Remarks on Classical Versification, Index of Proper Names, &c. By Prof. THOMAS CHASE. Price by mail, postpaid, $1.25.

CICERO'S SELECT ORATIONS. With Explanatory Notes, a Vocabulary, Life of Cicero, List of Consuls during his Life, Plan of the Roman Forum and its Surroundings, &c. By Prof. GEORGE STUART. Price by mail, postpaid, $1.50.

SALLUST'S CATILINE AND JUGURTHINE WAR. With Explanatory Notes, Vocabulary, &c. By Prof. GEORGE STUART. Price by mail, postpaid, $1.25.

VIRGIL'S ÆNEID. With Explanatory Notes, Metrical Index, Remarks on Classical Versification, Index of Proper Names, &c. By Prof. THOMAS CHASE. Price by mail, postpaid, $1.50.

HORACE'S ODES, SATIRES, AND EPISTLES. With Explanatory Notes, Metrical Key, Index of Proper Names, &c. By Prof. THOMAS CHASE. Price by mail, postpaid, $1.50.

CICERO DE SENECTUTE ET DE AMICITIA. With Explanatory Notes, &c. By E. P. CROWELL, Professor of Latin, and H. B. RICHARDSON, Instructor of Latin in Amherst College. Price by mail, postpaid, $1.25.

In Preparation.

ECLOGUES AND GEORGICS OF VIRGIL.
LIVY.

We ask the teacher who is not familiar with these books, to avail himself of our terms for obtaining specimen copies, and then to judge for himself whether we make too extravagant a claim for them when we assert, that

As Classical Text-books
They have no Superiors.

COMPOSITION AND RHETORIC. A Text-Book for Schools, Academies, and Colleges. By JOHN S. HART, LL. D., Principal of the New Jersey State Normal School. Price by mail, post-paid, $1.50.

Dr. Hart has been engaged for at least one-third of a century in the practical duties of the school-room, and for years past has made a speciality of the subject of which the present volume treats. He thus brings to his work a full knowledge of the wants of both teacher and scholar in this important branch of education, and he has spared no pains to make the book *eminently practical and adapted to use in the class-room.* The peculiar features of the book are apparent, and, we believe, combine all the elements of a popular and successful text-book. The author's own style of composition, so remarkable for its rhetorical excellence, gives to his work the advantage of being on every page a model of what it teaches.

The typographical arrangement is such as to please the eye, and, at the same time, enable the teacher to assign for memoriter exercises, only the more important rules, definitions, etc., leaving the argumentative and descriptive portions to be either committed to memory, studied in some more general way, or used as a reading or class exercise, as the teacher may deem most expedient.

The great variety and copiousness of the "Examples for Practice" will, we are sure, commend the book to general favor. In this respect we believe it unequalled by any similar work heretofore published.

FIRST LESSONS IN COMPOSITION. For Beginners. By JOHN S. HART, LL. D., Principal of the New Jersey State Normal School. Price by mail, post-paid, 90 cents.

A greater help to the Teacher never was invented. It will revolutionize the whole work of teaching. By the increased power of expression which it gives to the pupil it doubles his progress in every study.

AN ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA, FOR SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES. By JOSEPH W. WILSON, A.M., Professor of Mathematics in the Philadelphia Central High School. Price by mail, postpaid, $1.25.

The present work is the result of an effort to produce an Elementary Algebra suited to the wants of classes commencing the study. It has been prepared by one who for years has felt the need of just such a book, and is the fruit of

LONG EXPERIENCE IN THE SCHOOL-ROOM.

With this book in hand, the pupil cannot help avoiding the difficulties which invariably present themselves at the very threshold of the study of Algebra. We take pleasure in calling the attention of teachers to the following points, in which the author has endeavored to make the work a useful one.

CLEARNESS.

The great aim, throughout, has been to make everything as plain as the nature of the subject would permit. Every principle has been explained, and unnecessary verbiage avoided.

A VERY GRADUAL ADVANCE.

Complex subjects have been subdivided, so far as possible, into their elements, so that the learner may have to take *but one step at a time.*

A PRACTICAL CHARACTER.

There is a continual review and repetition of whatever has been learned. Much more attention than usual has been given to Fractions, as a drill on them is believed to be essential to a full comprehension of Algebraic operations, and a ready facility in performing them. The examples are very numerous, and are all original, so that this book may be used in connection with others, without fear of any accidental repetition.

AN ANALYTICAL METHOD.

This is essentially the same as that which has been so successfully used in Mental Arithmetic. Synthetic arrangement has been subordinate to convenience of teaching.

ACCURACY OF LANGUAGE.

Such expressions as *Add the equations together*, where the meaning is, *Add their corresponding members*, have been carefully avoided. Hundreds of these errors have crept into some of the best books. The learner thus insensibly acquires a careless and incorrect use of language, which often clouds his apprehension of principles otherwise clear. The book will be found admirably adapted to the use of classes in

COMMON SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES.

It has been the aim to give such a presentation of the subject as will meet the wants of this class of schools. It is an elementary work, and no attempt has been made to include everything which might be brought under the head of Algebra. The treatment of the subject is on the principle of

STEP BY STEP.

So that the pupil at the very outset is inspired with a degree of confidence which induces self-reliance; rendering unnecessary a constant application to the teacher for help, and proving that the study is in itself,

SIMPLE, PROGRESSIVE, AND PRACTICAL.

In conclusion, an effort has been made to specially adapt the work to those teachers who are not satisfied with anything less than an ability on the part of their pupils to fully explain every operation which they perform. To such, the book is commended, in the hope that it will satisfy a need which the author has himself frequently felt.

THE CRITTENDEN COMMERCIAL ARITHMETIC AND BUSINESS MANUAL. Designed for the Use of Teachers, Business Men, Academies, High Schools, and Commercial Colleges. By JOHN GROESBECK, Consulting Accountant, and Principal of Crittenden's Philadelphia Commercial College. Price by mail, post-paid, $1.50.

In every High School and Academy in the land, the organization of a class in Commercial Arithmetic, Business Calculations and Forms, will prove an element of popularity and success that will yield rich results. The subject itself is so intrinsically valuable as a means of developing thought, that, were this the only result to be gained, it would be entitled to and should receive the special attention of the progressive teacher. But apart from this, the introduction of a study so interesting in itself, so attractive to the scholar, and having so direct a bearing on his future welfare, will, in many an instance, decide the welfare of a school, directing the channel of popular opinion in its favor, and prove the means of filling it with students anxious to secure its advantages.

Circulars containing full descriptive notice, testimonials, &c., will be sent to any address on application.

A MANUAL OF ELOCUTION. Founded upon the Philosophy of the Human Voice, with Classified Illustrations, Suggested by and Arranged to meet the Practical Difficulties of Instruction. By M. S. MITCHELL. Price by mail, post-paid, $1.50.

SUBJECTS TREATED OF.

Articulation, Pronunciation, Accent, Emphasis, Modulation, Melody of Speech, Pitch, Tone, Inflections, Sense, Cadence, Force, Stress, Grammatical and Rhetorical Pauses, Movement, Reading of Poetry, Action, Attitude, Analysis of the Principles of Gestures, and Oratory.

The compiler cannot conceal the hope that this glimpse of our general literature may tempt to individual research among its treasures, so varied and inexhaustible;—that this text-book for the

school-room may become not only teacher, but friend, to those in whose hands it is placed, and while aiding, through systematic development and training of the elocutionary powers of the pupil, to overcome many of the practical difficulties of instruction, may accomplish a higher work in the cultivation and refinement of character.

THE MODEL DEFINER. An Elementary Book for Beginners, containing Definitions, Etymology, and Sentences as Models, exhibiting the correct use of Words. By A. C. WEBB. Price by mail, post-paid, 25 cents.

THE MODEL ETYMOLOGY. Giving not only the Definitions, Etymology, and Analysis, but also that which can be obtained only from an intimate acquaintance with the best authors, viz.: the correct use of Words. With a Key containing the analysis of every word which could present any difficulties to the learner. By A. C. WEBB. Price by mail, post-paid, 60 cents.

The plan adopted in the Model Definer and Model Etymology is not new. All good Dictionaries illustrate the meaning by a Model. To quote from a good author, a sentence containing the word, as proof of its correct use, is the only authority allowed. A simple trial of the work, either by requiring the child to form sentences similar to those given, or by memorizing the sentences as models for future use, will convince any one of the following advantages to be derived from the Model Word-Book Series.

1. Saving of time.
2. Increased knowledge of words.
3. Ease to teacher and scholar.
4. A knowledge of the correct use of words.

Descriptive Circular sent on application.

MARTINDALE'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES. From the Discovery of America to the close of the late Rebellion. By JOSEPH C. MARTINDALE, M.D., Principal of the Madison Grammar School, Philadelphia. Price by mail, post-paid, 60 cents.

With this book in his hand, the scholar can in a single school-term obtain as complete a knowledge of the History of the United States as has heretofore required double the time and effort.

Teachers who are anxious to have their pupils proficient in this subject, or who are themselves desirous of reviewing the main points of History in order to pass a creditable examination, will find this *the book for their purposes.*

Descriptive Circular sent on application.

THE YOUNG STUDENT'S COMPANION; or, Elementary Lessons and Exercises in Translating from English into French. By M. A. LONGSTRETH, Principal of a Seminary for Young Ladies, Philadelphia. Price by mail, post-paid, $1.00.

IN THE SCHOOL-ROOM; or, CHAPTERS IN THE PHILOSOPHY OF EDUCATION. By JOHN S. HART, LL. D., Principal of New Jersey State Normal School. Price by mail, post-paid, $1.25.

This work gives the results of the experience and observation of the author "in the School-Room" for a period of years extending over more than one-third of a century.

No teacher can afford to be without it.
It is a teacher's library in a single book.

THE MODEL ROLL-BOOK, No. 1. For the use of Schools. Containing a Record of Attendance, Punctuality, Deportment, Orthography, Reading, Penmanship, Intellectual Arithmetic, Practical Arithmetic, Geography, Grammar, Analysis, Parsing and History, and several blanks for special studies not enumerated. Price by mail, post-paid, $5.00.

THE MODEL ROLL-BOOK, No. 2. For the use of High Schools, Academies and Seminaries. Containing a Record of all the studies mentioned in Roll-Book No. 1, together with Declamation, Elocution, Algebra, Geometry, Composition, Rhetoric, French, Latin, Philosophy, Physiology, and several blanks for special studies not enumerated. Price by mail, post-paid, $5.00.

Since the first publication of the Model Roll-Books, they have been very materially improved. They have been made uniform in size and price; each page has been arranged to exhibit a record for one month, and space has been assigned for a monthly summary. These Roll-Books are in use in the leading schools in Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore, Cincinnati, Chicago, and St. Louis, and very extensively in Academies, Seminaries, and High Schools throughout the Country. They will, on examination, be found to be the most complete and practical yet published. All teachers who use them speak of them with unqualified approval.

THE MODEL POCKET REGISTER AND GRADE-BOOK. A Roll-Book, Record, and Grade-Book combined. Adapted to all grades of classes, whether in College, Academy, Seminary, High or Primary School. Handsomely bound in fine English cloth, bevelled sides, crimson edges. Price by mail, post-paid, 65 cents.

THE MODEL SCHOOL DIARY. Designed as an aid in securing the co-operation of parents. It consists of a Record of the Attendance, Deportment, Recitations, &c., of the Scholar, for every day in the week. At the close of the week it is to be sent to the parent or guardian for his examination and signature. Copies will be mailed to teachers for examination, post-paid, on receipt of ten cents. Price per dozen, by mail, post-paid, $1.05.